

On Screen

Student's Book

Intermediate B1+/B2



Virginia Evans · Jenny Dooley



Express Publishing

Contents

	Vocabulary	Reading	Grammar
Module 1 People (pp. 5-20) Language Knowledge 1 (pp. 16-17) Language Focus 1 (p. 18) Progress Check 1 (pp. 19-20)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> appearance personality clothes & fashion jobs daily routine; free-time activities phrasal verbs with <i>look</i> forming adjectives from verbs & nouns 	<i>The Akha Way</i> (multiple choice; answer questions – how to deal with multiple choice reading tasks)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> present tenses <i>already, just, yet, (n)ever, for, since</i> stative verbs
Module 2 The Environment (pp. 21-36) Language Knowledge 2 (pp. 32-33) Language Focus 2 (p. 34) Progress Check 2 (pp. 35-36)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> our natural world of animals environmental problems & solutions phrasal verbs with <i>bring</i> forming nouns from verbs 	<i>Unique Underwater Creatures</i> (multiple choice; answer questions – get the main idea)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> modal verbs (<i>must, have to, should, ought to, mustn't, don't have to, needn't</i>) deductions past modals future tenses time clauses
Module 3 Travel & Holidays (pp. 37-52) Language Knowledge 3 (pp. 48-49) Language Focus 3 (p. 50) Progress Check 3 (pp. 51-52)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> types of holidays means of transport accommodation; facilities/services holiday problems phrasal verbs with <i>come</i> forming <i>-ing/-ed</i> adjectives 	<i>The Thundering Smoke</i> (missing sentences; answer questions – read for specific information)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> past tenses <i>used to – would</i>
Module 4 Festivals & Celebrations (pp. 53-68) Language Knowledge 4 (pp. 64-65) Language Focus 4 (p. 66) Progress Check 4 (pp. 67-68)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> festivals & celebrations activities feelings phrasal verbs with <i>make</i> forming adjectives (<i>-ful/-less</i>) 	<i>The Tar Ball</i> (multiple choice; answer questions – predict content)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> relatives defining & non-defining relative clauses comparatives & superlatives
Module 5 Crime (pp. 69-84) Language Knowledge 5 (pp. 80-81) Language Focus 5 (p. 82) Progress Check 5 (pp. 83-84)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> breaking the law crime & punishment law breakers phrasal verbs with <i>break</i> prefixes to express opposite meanings 	<i>The camera never lies</i> (multiple choice; answer questions – paragraph main ideas; matching headings to paragraphs)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the passive causative form clauses of result
Module 6 Technology (pp. 85-100) Language Knowledge 6 (pp. 96-97) Language Focus 6 (p. 98) Progress Check 6 (pp. 99-100)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> technology gadgets the Internet phrasal verbs with <i>be</i> verbs from adjectives using (<i>en/-en</i>) 	<i>The Toddler Robot</i> (multiple choice; answer questions – read for specific information)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> conditionals clauses of purpose wishes question tags
Module 7 Sports & Fitness (pp. 101-116) Language Knowledge 7 (pp. 112-113) Language Focus 7 (p. 114) Progress Check 7 (pp. 115-116)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> sports & fitness sports places & equipment phrasal verbs with <i>put</i> compound nouns 	<i>Adventures</i> (multiple matching; – answer comprehension questions)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> infinitive/<i>-ing</i> form tenses of the infinitive <i>-ing</i> form <i>would prefer/would rather/had better</i>
Module 8 Nature Attacks! (pp. 117-132) Language Knowledge 8 (pp. 128-129) Language Focus 8 (p. 130) Progress Check 8 (pp. 131-132)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> natural disasters extreme weather temperature phrasal verbs with <i>give</i> forming verbs from adjectives & nouns 	<i>Disasters</i> (multiple matching; answer questions)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> reported speech (statements, questions, commands; requests) <i>say – tell</i>, reporting verbs reporting modal verbs
CLIL/Culture pp. 133 (CC1) - 140 (CC8) Writing Bank pp. 141 (WB1a) - 149 (WB8) Grammar Reference pp. 150 (GR1) - 164 (GR15)		Style p. 165 (ST1) Word List pp. 166 (WL1) - 181 (WL16) Appendix p. 182 (APP1)	

Listening	Speaking	Writing	CLIL/Culture
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a radio interview (matching) a TV show (multiple choice) intonation: stressed syllables 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> describe people introduce oneself & others social expressions ask for/give personal information describe a picture express likes/dislikes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a paragraph comparing yourself with the Akha tribe an informal email – describing a person (informal style; word order; linking ideas; punctuation) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (Biology): <i>Where did you get that from?</i> (answer questions) Culture spot: Foot Guards
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interview (T/F statements) a lecture (multiple choice) stress in questions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> make suggestions agree/disagree make decisions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a paragraph suggesting ways to protect seahorses an essay providing solutions to problems (topic/supporting sentences; planning an essay) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (Environmental Science): <i>Precious Water</i> (T/F statements) Culture spot: Greenpeace
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> announcements (matching) a story (T/F note taking) a radio show (multiple choice) intonation: stress in exclamations (<i>what; what a/an; how</i>) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> asking for information express dissatisfaction/sympathy/surprise/disbelief describe pictures 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a description of an experience a description of a visit to a place (adjectives/adverbs; make comments; use modifiers; brainstorm for ideas) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (Geography): <i>Traffic</i> (matching) Culture spot: The Grand Canyon
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a TV commentary (note taking) a radio programme (multiple choice) intonation in exclamations (<i>such, such a/an, so</i>) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> invite & accept or refuse an invitation make decisions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a paragraph comparing & contrasting celebrations a description of a festival you attended (using adjectives; collocations; error correction; brainstorming) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (Art & Design): <i>World of Wearable Art</i> (T/F statements) Culture spot: Independence Day, USA
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> report emergencies (sentence completion) a radio show (multiple choice) intonation in echo questions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> state a problem ask for/give advice express concern compare & contrast pictures 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a description of a day in the life of a forensic photographer a report 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Curriculum (Maths): pie charts, bar charts, line graphs Culture spot: K-9 units
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a radio talk (note taking) a dialogue (multiple choice) intonation in question tags compare & contrast pictures 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> request/offer help complain/respond to a complaint compare pictures 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a paragraph expressing your feelings towards the future of robots a for-and-against essay (express contrast with <i>although, even though, despite, in spite of; topic/supporting sentences</i>) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (ICT): <i>How to save the battery power of your Tablet PC</i> (order of actions) Culture spot: Tim Berners-Lee
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a documentary (note taking) a dialogue (multiple choice) pronunciation: /u/, /u:/ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ask for opinion – give opinion; ask for reasons describe photographs – compare and contrast photographs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a paragraph giving reasons an opinion essay (I) (linking words; topic/supporting sentences) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (PE): <i>Octopush</i> (complete sentences) Culture spot: baseball
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a radio documentary (multiple choice) monologues (matching speakers) pronunciation: homophones 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> break news – respond express surprise – disbelief 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> an interview a story (past tenses; adjectives/adverbs; set the scene; brainstorm) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLIL (Science): <i>Tornadoes</i> (matching headings to paragraphs) Culture spot: FESA

Pronunciation p. 183 (PR1)
 American English-British English Guide p. 184 (AE-BEG1)
 Tapescripts pp. 185 (T1) - 195 (T11)

Evaluations pp. 196 (E1) - 210 (E15)
 Irregular Verbs

People

Module 1

MODULE OBJECTIVES

Vocabulary

- appearance/character/clothes
- personality
- jobs
- daily routines, free time activities
- prepositions
- phrasal verbs: *look*
- word formation: adjectives from verbs & nouns

Reading

- multiple choice
- answer questions

Grammar

- present tenses
- stative verbs

Listening

- a radio interview (true/false statements)
- a part of a TV show (multiple choice)
- intonation: stressed syllables

Speaking

- introduce ourselves/others
- ask about/express likes/dislikes
- ask for/give personal information
- social expressions
- describe a picture
- describe a person

Writing

- a paragraph comparing your lifestyle to a tribe's lifestyle
- an informal email describing a person

Language Focus

- phrasal verbs & prepositions
- word formation
- grammar in focus

Progress Check

Appearance/Character/Clothes

1 Complete the descriptions.



- A** • optimistic • fair • trainers
• shoulder-length

- B** • spiky • beard • polite • early
• dark • overweight • casual

Becky is a pretty girl. She is slim with 1) dark hair. She has a 2) complexion, a small nose and blue eyes. She is wearing a pink T-shirt, jeans and 3) She is sporty and 4) and tends to expect good things to happen.

Steve is in his 1) thirties. He is tall and 2) with short 3) black hair. He has a 4) complexion, a big nose, a 5) and a moustache. He is wearing 6) clothes, a white T-shirt and jeans. He is a very 7) person and behaves towards people in a pleasant way.

- C** • wrinkles
• jumper
• caring
• medium
• bald
• skinny

Larry is old and of 1) height. He is 2) and has a pale complexion with 3) He is going 4) His hair is grey and he has a big nose. He is wearing a 5) and trousers. He is a 6) person and always helps others.

2 Use the words/phrases below to describe the rest of the people in Ex. 1.

- teenager, tall, slim, pale complexion, long straight fair hair, big eyes, pointed nose / striped top, jacket, jeans / outgoing – like meeting people
- handsome, slim, short, dark hair, brown eyes / shirt and tie, black leather jacket, trousers / can be arrogant – thinks he is better than others
- mid-forties, average height, slim, curly fair hair, small eyes, thin lips / cardigan, shirt, trousers / gentle – always kind and calm

3 Describe a person in your class. Your partner guesses who the person is.

1 a Reading

- 1** a) Look at the picture. Where do you think these people live: *in a desert? an overcrowded city? a village? up in the mountains?* How do you know? What do you think their lifestyles might be like?
- b) Check these words in the Word List. Use them to describe the people in the picture.

• *fairly short* • *dark in complexion*
 • *colourfully embroidered black shirts and skirts* • *thick black leggings*
 • *distinctive hats* • *remarkably tough*
 • *spirited* • *cheerful*

- 2** Read the title of the text and the first sentence in each paragraph. What is the text about?

🔊 Listen and read to check.

- 3** In your own words and based on the text, answer the questions.

- 1 What is the Akha Way?
- 2 How do Akha men's roles differ from Akha women's roles?
- 3 What are the 'spirit gates'?
- 4 How has the Akha people's lifestyle changed?

The AKHA Way

High up in the mountains of southeast Asia, you can find the Akha hill tribes living in their traditional villages and farming the land much as they have done for generations.

A The history of the Akha people goes back hundreds, if not thousands, of years. They originally came from Tibet and have maintained the physical characteristics of that region, being fairly short and dark in complexion. Today, they live in small villages in the mountainous parts of China, Laos, Burma, Vietnam and northern Thailand. The Akha people are rich in culture, history and tradition. But

they are also among the world's poorest people. Akha women remain remarkably tough, spirited and cheerful in the face of such a harsh life. Akha men are brave and strong.

B The Akha have their own way of measuring time where one week lasts 12 days; as well as their own sets of rules. Each village has its own leader or headman, and under his guidance people follow a code of behaviour known as the Akha Way. Thanks to the Akha Way, each person in these small communities knows their role in society. The men provide for their families by farming crops like rice, corn and soya beans. They are also talented craftsmen and make crossbows, baskets and musical instruments from bamboo. The women do spinning and weaving and make their own clothes.



Check these words

• *generations* • *maintain* • *mountainous parts*
 • *code of behaviour* • *crossbows* • *ancestors* • *spinning*
 • *weaving* • *distinctive* • *thatched roof* • *stand on stilts*
 • *wooden frame* • *spiritual significance* • *honour*
 • *take things a step further* • *seek fortunes*

They wear colourfully embroidered black shirts and skirts, and thick black leggings. Their headdresses are especially distinctive. As for the children, even though many of them don't attend school, they all know the names of every plant and animal in the forest. There is no written Akha language but the oral tradition is very rich. Children have to memorise the names of all their ancestors, sometimes as far back as 60 generations!

C Akha villages all look quite similar. The bamboo houses with their thatched roofs stand on stilts on the hillsides. Every village has two wooden frames that look like a doorway at its entrance and exit. These structures have spiritual significance and are called the 'spirit gates'. Artists cover the frames with carvings of both evil and smiling faces. This is to invite good spirits to enter the village and keep bad spirits out. Each summer, with great ceremony, the men build a swing in a public open space. Here the young children gather to play, but not just as a playground game – it is part of the yearly ceremony to honour dead ancestors.

D Sadly, the Akha Way is slowly disappearing from many villages. A growing number of tourists are visiting them and introducing a taste of Western culture. You can now see young Akha tribesmen sporting leather jackets and mobile phones. The women and girls only dress traditionally when there are tourists around in the hope they will buy souvenirs. Some Akha have even decided to take things a step further: they are leaving their villages to seek their fortunes in the big cities.

STUDY SKILLS

Multiple choice

Read the text quickly to get the gist. Read the questions and possible answers and find the key words. Read the text again and find the part that contains the answer to each question. Try to find words/phrases synonymous to the key words in the questions. This will help you do the task.

4 Choose the best answers according to the text. Give reasons for your answers.

- The Akha people
 - live mainly on Tibetan farms.
 - are not used to severe conditions.
 - have a short history as a tribe.
 - are some of the least wealthy in the world.
- Akha women
 - are used to dealing with hardships.
 - do not mind being poor.
 - work harder than Akha men.
 - are more courageous than Akha men.
- The most characteristic part of the Akha women's clothing is their
 - shirts. B skirts. C leggings. D hats.
- The Akha build spirit gates on the edges of their villages to
 - welcome visitors to the village.
 - give artists a place to work.
 - protect the village from danger.
 - provide a play area for their children.
- The writer thinks that the Akha Way
 - is having an influence on Western culture.
 - may not be around for much longer.
 - is now only noticeable in the Akha people's clothes.
 - could take a long time to spread to cities.

5 Find words in the text that mean:

- initially (para A) • skin colour (para A)
- characteristic (para B)
- to learn by heart (para B)
- importance (para C)
- to come together (para C)
- to bring in (para D) • to look for (para D)

6 Fill in: *set, embroidered, attend, fairly, talented, memorise, physical, honour, keep, thatched.*

- 1 characteristics; 2 short; 3 of rules; 4 craftsmen; 5 shirts; 6 to names; 7 to school; 8 roofs; 9 to spirits out; 10 to ancestors



Use the phrases in Ex. 6 to give the class a short summary of the text either in English or in Polish.



Compare yourself with a person from the Akha tribe. Think about: appearance, clothes, family, lifestyle. Use: *and, as well, too* (similar ideas) – *but, whereas* (opposing ideas). Read your paragraph to the class.

1b

Vocabulary from the text

- 1** Replace the words in bold with words from the list.
- leadership • a step further
 - attend • honour • gather
 - maintain • introduce
 - memorise
- 1 He tries to **keep** a youthful physical appearance.
 - 2 They **get together** at Sam's house every Friday.
 - 3 We have to **learn** the poem by **heart** for school tomorrow.
 - 4 I think every child should **go to** kindergarten.
 - 5 Under the new manager's **guidance**, the company went from strength to strength.
 - 6 Every year, they have a ceremony to **show their respect to** their ancestors.
 - 7 I think the time has come for us to take things **forward**.
 - 8 If we **bring in** modern cultural practices to the tribe, we'll destroy their traditional way of life.

2 Choose the correct word.

- 1 We have a **codellaw** of behaviour here. Please respect it.
- 2 Everyone has a responsibility in **society/region** to obey the laws.
- 3 We should all try to help maintain our local **community/society**.
- 4 My **ancestors/descendants** all came from Europe.
- 5 Sadly, many of the tribe's traditional practices are **disappearing/removing**.
- 6 It's important to **remain/hold** calm during an argument.
- 7 I am a **lightly/fairly** optimistic person.
- 8 She has very **individual/distinctive** eyes – the colour is unlike anything I've ever seen.

Vocabulary

Topic vocabulary Clothes

3 Choose the correct words.

A Steve is wearing 1) **formal/casual** clothes. He's wearing a brown 2) **jacket/coat**, a blue and red 3) **cotton/plastic** cap, a yellow woollen 4) **jumper/waistcoat** and an orange 5) **scarf/belt**. He's also wearing grey 6) **baggy/floral** tracksuit bottoms and brown 7) **trainers/boots**. He looks quite 8) **conservative/trendy** and sporty.



B Mary is wearing a white dress with black 9) **polka dots/stripes**, and a red 10) **leather/cotton** belt. She's also wearing red 11) **high-heeled/platform** shoes. She looks 12) **fashionable/sloppy**.



4 Describe what the people in the pictures are wearing. Use words from Ex. 3 as well as your own ideas.



5 Fill in: **try on, match, fit, suits, do up.**

- 1 These jeans don't me. They are the wrong size.
- 2 Can I please this coat?
- 3 I'm looking for a pair of shoes to this dress.
- 4 Do you think this colour me?
- 5 your coat. It's very cold outside.

Phrasal verbs: LOOK



6 Choose the correct particle. Check in the Word List. What are these phrasal verbs in Polish?

- 1 I'm looking my little cousin this weekend. (**take care of**)
- 2 We can't wait to meet your parents. We're looking to it. (**anticipate**)
- 3 You shouldn't look people who have less money than you. (**have a bad opinion of**)
- 4 If you don't know his phone number, just look it in the yellow pages. (**find in a book/list**)

Personality

7 a) Match the adjectives in A with their opposites in B.

Positive

- 1 optimistic
- 2 modest
- 3 hardworking
- 4 interesting
- 5 organised
- 6 caring
- 7 patient
- 8 truthful/honest
- 9 cheerful
- 10 gentle
- 11 polite
- 12 generous

Negative

- A dull
- B rude
- C arrogant
- D lazy
- E dishonest/deceitful
- F moody
- G pessimistic
- H impatient
- I aggressive
- J indifferent
- K disorganised
- L selfish

b) Choose words from Ex. 7a to complete the sentences.

- 1 people always see the positive side of things.
- 2 people don't like talking about their achievements.
- 3 people are kind and calm.
- 4 people tell a lot of lies.
- 5 people think they are more important or talented than others.
- 6 people often become sad or angry for no particular reason.
- 7 people always want to start fights.
- 8 people are helpful and sympathetic to others.
- 9 people only care about themselves and not others.
- 10 people get easily annoyed when they have to wait for something.

c) Which adjectives best describe you/your friends?

I'm quite organised and polite.

Jobs

8 Add a suffix **-ant -ian -er -or** to the verbs in the list to make names of jobs. Match the jobs to the descriptions (1-10). How do you form names of jobs in Polish?

- electric • beauty • bake • clean • translate • mine
- farm • music • account • act

- 1 I change written words from one language into another. *translator*
- 2 I work underground to remove coal.
- 3 I play roles in films.
- 4 I keep and check the financial records of people.
- 5 I grow crops and keep animals.
- 6 I fix problems with electrical wires.
- 7 I use make-up to improve people's appearances.
- 8 I make bread and cakes and sell them in a shop.
- 9 I tidy other people's houses.
- 10 I play the piano very well.

Prepositions

9 Choose the correct item. Check in the Word List.

- 1 She's attached *in/to* her family.
- 2 He is jealous *off/about* his brother for being good at sports.
- 3 He is interested *in/at* nature.
- 4 I don't really care *off/about* designer clothes.
- 5 Don't be rude *to/with* your teachers.

Word formation (adjectives from verbs & nouns)

10 Read the theory, then complete the sentences (1-8) with the adjectives derived from the words in bold.

We can form adjectives from verbs and nouns by using the following endings:
-ful (*care-careful*), **-ic** (*drama-dramatic*), **-ive** (*decide-decisive*), **-ious** (*superstition-superstitious*), **-less** (*self-selfless*), **-ish** (*child-childish*), **-y** (*pick-picky*), **-ing** (*care-caring*)

- 1 John is very He never remembers where his things are. (**FORGET**)
- 2 Luke is I think he'll become a painter. (**CREATE**)
- 3 He's very He wants to become rich and famous. (**AMBITION**)
- 4 Ann's She's always talking about the same things. (**BORE**)
- 5 Don't be Think of others first. (**SELF**)
- 6 He's very He tells the best jokes. (**FUN**)
- 7 Sue's quite She's very good at drawing. (**ART**)
- 8 Jess is and often offends people. (**TACT**)

1c Grammar in use

Present simple, Present continuous, Present perfect

see pp. 150 (GR1) - 151 (GR2)

- 1 a) Read the cartoon. What is the man selling? What is special about it?
b) Look at the verb forms in bold in the cartoon. Find examples of:

- a habit • an action happening at or around the time of speaking • a fact • a fixed future arrangement
- an action which started in the past and continues to the present • gradually developing situations

What tense is used in each case? Is it the same in Polish?

- 2 a) Fill in: *do, go or have*.

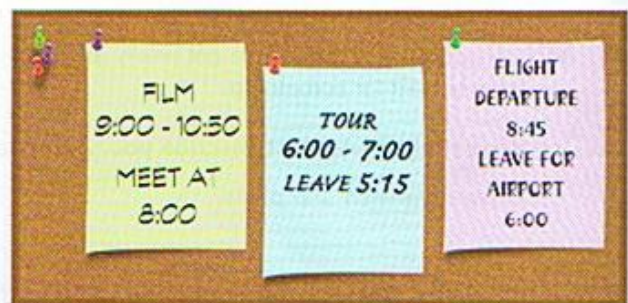
1) out for a meal; 2) the washing-up; 3) a shower/a bath; 4) for a walk; 5) to work/school; 6) housework; 7) breakfast/lunch/dinner; 8) shopping; 9) homework; 10) jogging; 11) out with friends; 12) for a swim; 13) the shopping; 14) to the cinema; 15) to bed

b) Use the question words in the box to find out about your partner's daily routine and free-time activities.

- How often ...? • When ...? • Where ...?
- What time ...? • How ...?

A: How often do you go out for a meal?
B: Once a week./Twice a month.

- 3 Read the example. Which tense do we use for: timetables? future arrangements? Use the notes to act out short exchanges.



A: What time does the film start?

B: It starts at 9:00, so we **are meeting** at 8:00.

- 4 Form complete sentences. Put the verbs in bold in the *present simple* or the *present continuous*.

- do/she/at the moment/her homework
She is doing her homework at the moment.
- usually/go/by bus/he/to work
- dinner/tonight/I/with Paul/have!
- eat out/you/how often?
- not work/tonight/late/Peter
- the kids/now/watch TV?
- on Mondays/to the gym/John/not go

Stative verbs

Stative verbs describe a state rather than an action (e.g. *like, love, hate, want, need, forget, remember, know, suppose*). They do not usually have continuous forms. Some stative verbs do have continuous forms but there is a difference in meaning. *I like wearing casual clothes.*

▶ see p. 151 (GR2)

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or *continuous*. Explain the meaning of both sentences in each pair.

- 1 a Linda unhappy. (**look**)
b Linda for her necklace. (**look**)
- 2 a Tina unwell today. (**feel**)
b Tina's silk scarf very soft. (**feel**)
- 3 a Tom his own flat. (**have**)
b Tom a shower now. (**have**)
- 4 a I of buying a bike. (**think**)
b I it's fantastic. (**think**)
- 5 a This cake delicious. (**taste**)
b She the soup to see if it's spicy. (**taste**)

Already/Just/Yet/Ever/Never/For/Since

- 1 I've **already** had lunch.
- 2 I **haven't done** my homework **yet**.
- 3 I've **just had** a coffee.
- 4 A: **Have you ever played** the trumpet?
B: No, I **haven't**./Yes, I **have**.
- 5 I've **never** travelled abroad.
- 6 I've been here **since** last May/**for** two months.

▶ see p. 150 (GR1)

6 Choose the correct word.

- 1 She's **never/already** flown in a plane.
- 2 They've **just/yet** left.
- 3 He hasn't finished his homework **yet/ever**.
- 4 Have you **never/ever** ridden a camel?
- 5 We have **yet/already** met Claire.
- 6 She hasn't seen Paul **since/for** last Friday.

7 Think of your day. What have you *already/just/not yet done*? Tell your partner.

*I've **already** done my homework. I've **just** had dinner. I **haven't** tidied my room **yet**.*

Present perfect continuous

She **has been working** for him for a long time.
She **has been working** for him since 1992.

▶ see p. 152 (GR3)

8 Read the examples in the grammar box. How do we form the present perfect continuous? Do you use these tenses in Polish? How?

9 Use the verbs in the present perfect continuous to write true sentences about yourself and your family. Use *since* or *for*.

• study • work • play • live

I've been studying French for two years/since 2009.

10 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present tense.

- 1 A: (**you/see**) Mary recently?
B: No, I (not/talk) to her since last month.
- 2 A: (**we/meet**) before?
B: I (not/think) so.
- 3 A: Where (you/go)?
B: Shopping. (you/want) anything?
- 4 A: Where (Tony/live)?
B: In London – but at the moment he (stay) in Bahrain.
- 5 A: (you/come) to Ann's party tonight?
B: I'd love to, but I (fly) to London. The plane (leave) at 10:30.

11 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Is it a *formal* or *informal* email? Give reasons.

Dear Charlotte,
Hi! How are you? 1) (you/enjoy) the summer break? I 2) (have) an amazing time here in London. My host family 3) (be) really friendly and the summer English course I 4) (do), is a lot of fun. I 5) (already/make) some good friends here. My best friend is Laura. She's from Italy. She 6) (look) a bit like you actually. She's tall, with beautiful long dark hair and big brown eyes. Like me, she 7) (be) in London since July. I 8) (like) her because she's funny and cheerful. She's also very generous. 9) (you/meet) anyone nice so far?
Write back soon!
Alice

1d Listening skills

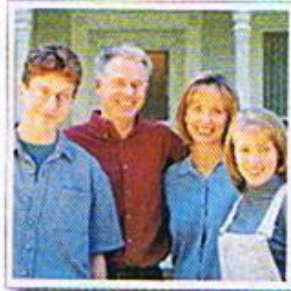
1 a) Complete the pairs.

🔊 Listen and check.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 granddad –
<i>grandma</i> | 5 son – |
| 2 father – | 6 cousin – |
| 3 uncle – | 7 brother – |
| 4 nephew – | 8 brother-in-law –
..... |

b) Use words from Ex. 1a to present your family to the class.

There are four members in my family. My dad, Peter, my mum, Laura, my sister, Sue and me. My dad is ...



2 a) You are going to listen to part of a radio interview about a young ballerina. Before you listen check these words in the Word List.

- hometown • treasure the time
- extended family • delighted • support
- inspiration • afford • lead role • venue

b) 🗣️ Listen and write how the people below are related to Jane Ivory.

Sandra **peter** **Jenny** **Bertie**

3 🗣️ Listen again and decide if each sentence is **True** or **False**.

- 1 Jane Ivory has been performing as a ballerina for 24 years.
- 2 Jane's brother still lives in his hometown.
- 3 Jane's aunt now runs her own school.
- 4 Jane's grandpa gave her financial assistance.
- 5 Jane has performed in *Swan Lake* before.
- 6 Jane seems to be worried about her role.

4 Work in pairs. Write down the names of three people you know. Exchange papers and find out about each person.

- A: *Who's James?*
 B: *He's my cousin.*
 A: *What does he look like?*
 B: *He's short and slim, with short fair hair and blue eyes.*
 A: *What is he like?*
 B: *He's honest and polite.*

STUDY SKILLS

Predicting content

Before you listen, read the rubric, the statements and possible answers. This will help you familiarise yourself with what the recording will be about.

5 a) Read the rubric, statements and answers. What do you think the dialogue is about?

Listen to a part of a TV show. For questions 1-6 choose the correct answer A, B or C.

- 1 The TV show is about
 - A British chat shows.
 - B the life and times of a TV personality.
 - C the history of British TV.
- 2 James first met Anna
 - A in London.
 - B in Paris.
 - C at a rugby match.
- 3 James describes Anna as
 - A a difficult person to be around.
 - B someone with a positive view of life.
 - C a talkative person.
- 4 The interest James and Anna share is
 - A going to the cinema.
 - B watching TV.
 - C watching classic films.
- 5 When James's daughter was born
 - A James resigned from work.
 - B James spent most of his time at home.
 - C James was beginning a new career.
- 6 James's daughter, Laura,
 - A is employed as a fashion designer.
 - B has not started working yet.
 - C has chosen the same career as her father.

b) Check these words in the Word List.

- chat-show host • incredible • bright
- demanding • resign • degree • confident

c) 🗣️ Do the listening task in Ex. 5a.

Intonation: Stressed syllables

6 🗣️ Listen and say. Which syllables are stressed?

- talented • generous • optimistic • modest
- understanding • confident • energetic

Speaking skills 1e

**Introduce ourselves/others –
Ask for/Give personal information –
Ask about/Express likes/dislikes**

1 a) Complete the conversation with words from the table below.

- favourite band • stand • love
- name's • prefer • pleasure
- like you • met before • you from



Juliet: Hello. I don't think we've 1)
I'm Juliet.
Dan: Hi Juliet. My 2) Dan.
Juliet: It's a 3) to meet you, Dan.
Dan: Nice to meet you, too. Where are
4) ?
Juliet: I'm from London. And you?
Dan: I'm from Glasgow. So, are you enjoying the
party?
Juliet: Well, to be honest, I can't 5)
the music. I don't like dance music at all.
Dan: I know what you mean. I 6)
rock music.
Juliet: Really? What's your 7) ?
Dan: I really love Radiohead. They're great!
Juliet: Oh, Dan, I'd 8) to meet Sasha.
Dan: Hi Sasha. Do you and Juliet work together?
Sasha: No, we play on the same football team.
Dan: Really? I 9) football!
Juliet: You should play with us some time then!

b) Listen and check your answers. Listen again. Is the dialogue *formal* or *informal*? Check on p. 165.

c) Take roles and read the dialogue aloud.

2 Work in groups of three. You and your cousin are at a party. Introduce yourself and your cousin to a person there, then ask questions to get to know the person better. Use the phrases in the table below to act out a dialogue similar to the one in Ex. 1a.

Introducing yourself/others	Responding
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hello. I'm ... /My name's ... • I don't think we've met before. I'm ... • I'd like you to meet ... / This is ... 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nice to meet you. • It's a pleasure to meet you.
Asking about likes/dislikes	Expressing likes/dislikes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What kind of music/films do you like? • Do you like ...? • What do you think of ...? • What's your favourite subject/band, etc? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I really enjoy/like/love+noun ... • I can't stand ... • I don't mind ... • I prefer ...
Asking about personal information	Responding
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where are you from? • Which school do you go to? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I'm from ... • I go to ...

Social expressions

3 Match the exchanges.

Listen and check. In pairs repeat.

1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Have a nice weekend.	a Fine, thanks.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Come on – we must go.	b Take care. See you later.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	How are things?	c Sleep well.
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Goodnight.	d Just a minute.
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	Sorry I'm late.	e Never mind. You're here now.
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Bye. I'm off to the gym now.	f Thanks, you too.

Describing a picture

4 a) Look at the picture in Ex. 1a and complete the sentences.

- 1 The picture shows some people ...
- 2 They are at ...
- 3 The girls in the foreground are ... They are wearing ... They are talking to a man.
- 4 The man is ... He is wearing ...
- 5 Everyone seems to ...

b) Listen and check.

1 f

Writing An email describing a person

▶ Writing Bank 1 p. 141 (WB1a)

Rubric analysis

1 Read the rubric and look at the underlined words. Answer the questions.

You have just started attending a new school. Write an email to your English e-friend, Penny, in which you describe your favourite classmate, including their appearance and personality (120-180 words).

- 1 What are you going to write?
- 2 Who are you?
- 3 Who is going to read your piece of writing?
- 4 What topics should you include in your piece of writing?
- 5 What style should you use?
- 6 How long should your piece of writing be?

Opening/Closing remarks

2 a) Which of the sentences are: opening remarks? closing remarks?

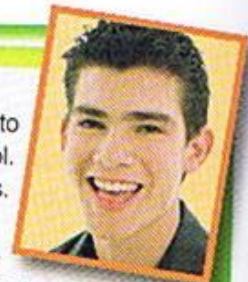
- 1 How's it going?
- 2 Got to go now.
- 3 Hope you're OK.
- 4 Have to go now.
- 5 I'd better get going.
- 6 How are you doing?
- 7 Email me soon.
- 8 Thanks for your email.

b) Replace the opening/closing remarks in Anna's letter with sentences from Ex. 2a.

Model analysis

3 a) Read the model. Which paragraph is about:

- 1 the writer's feelings about the person?
- 2 name of person, how the writer met him?
- 3 person's personality?
- 4 person's appearance?



Dear Penny,

A How are you? Just dropping you a line to tell you how I'm getting on at my new school. I've made friends with one of my classmates. His name's Charlie and he's great fun.

B Charlie's tall and slim, with short spiky brown hair. He's got a pale complexion and bright blue eyes. He's quite handsome and dresses casually in jeans and trainers.

C Charlie is a very kind person who's always ready to help others. He's also extremely funny. I'm always laughing at his jokes. Outside class, he's very sociable. He's taking me to a party tomorrow! He can be a bit arrogant at times though, and doesn't always listen to what I say.

D I'm really glad I've met Charlie. He's made all the difference to being at a new school. Write back soon.

Love,
Anna

b) List all the words Anna uses to describe Charlie's appearance and personality.

Informal style

4 Which of the sentences are True? Provide examples from the email.

Anna's email is informal because it contains:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 everyday language | 4 omission of personal pronouns |
| 2 short verb forms | 5 simple linking words |
| 3 long sentences | |

Word order

5 Read the examples. Complete the rules. Use before or after.

S V adverb O S adverb of frequency S V adverb of frequency
 Charlie is very tall. He often goes to the gym. He is never late for class. He plays football very well.

- 1 The subject always goes the verb.
- 2 The object normally goes the verb.
- 3 Adverbs of frequency go an auxiliary verb but a main verb.
- 4 Adverbs go adjectives/adverbs.

6 Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 person/Peter/kind/is/very/a
- 2 hair/he/long/has got
- 3 he/goes jogging/often
- 4 visits/he/his grandparents/sometimes
- 5 he/people/arrogant/doesn't like
- 6 has/been/Peter/never/abroad



Linking ideas

7 Study the examples.

- John is tall. He is skinny. He has short straight hair. John is tall **and** skinny **with** short straight hair.
- Ann is clever. She is polite. She can be stubborn at times. Ann's clever **and** polite. **However**, she can be stubborn at times. Ann's clever. She's **also** polite, **but** she can be stubborn at times.
- Mary is a sweet girl. She has got a pale complexion. Mary is a sweet girl **who** has got a pale complexion.

8 Complete the paragraphs with the words from the lists.

- however • also • and • who • and • with

Harry is very intelligent 1) always gets good marks in all his tests. He is 2) creative and likes to compose music on his guitar. 3) , he can be rude and sometimes says unpleasant things to people.

Lisa is a pretty girl 4) will soon be fourteen years old. She is quite tall for her age. 5) long curly hair, big green eyes. 6) a wide friendly smile.

- also • both • but

My grandmother is 7) generous and kind. She always gives me pocket money and she 8) cooks my favourite meal when I visit her on Sundays. She is a bit hot-tempered sometimes. 9) she never stays angry for long.

Punctuation

- 9 a) When do we use a comma (,), a full stop (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), an apostrophe ('), and capital letters? Check in the Grammar Reference section.
- b) Punctuate the sentences below.

- 1 im just great how are you
- 2 alex and i are going to a party tomorrow
- 3 cant wait to hear from you
- 4 he's clever but he can be rude at times what can i do

Your turn

- 10 a) Read the rubric and find the key words. Make notes under the headings: **name** - **age** - **appearance** - **character**.

Write an email to your English e-friend describing your neighbour. Include details of what he/she looks like and is like (120-180 words).

- b) Use your notes and phrases from the Useful Language box to make sentences about the person.

I first met Steve in the park two years ago.

- 11 Check the theory in the Writing Bank. Then write your email. Use your notes in Ex. 10a, the plan and the Useful Language. Join your sentences with appropriate linkers.

Useful Language

Opening remarks

- I first met ...
- has been my friend for ...

Physical Appearance/Clothes

- ... is quite (good-looking, attractive, etc).
- ... is (tall and slim) with (brown eyes) and (fair hair).
- ... dresses casually/formally.

Personality

- ... is very (outgoing/cheerful).
- ... is always (friendly) and loves/hates/enjoys ...
- ... has a great sense of humour.
- ... but can be (aggressive, lazy, bossy, etc) at times.
- ... is a very (interesting/friendly) person.

Feelings/Comments

- It's great fun to be with ...
- I'm glad to have ... as my friend.

Plan

Dear + (your e-friend's first name)

Introduction

(Para 1) Greet your e-friend. Say who you are going to describe & when / where you met.

Main Body

(Para 2) Describe the person's physical appearance / clothes.

(Para 3) Describe the person's personality giving supporting details / examples.

Conclusion

(Para 4) Write your feelings / comments about the person. Tell your e-friend to keep in touch.



Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for:

- spelling/grammar mistakes.
- correct word order.
- appropriate style (formal, informal).
- appropriate beginning/ending.
- well-structured paragraphs.
- inclusion of all points in the rubric.
- word length.

Language Knowledge

1

- 1** For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C, D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0). What style is the text written in? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

The Role of the Teacher

There can be no doubt that teachers **0**) A a vital role in shaping students' lives. Today's educators are not **1**) responsible for their students' academic achievements, but also for their well-being outside the school environment. This could involve offering students valuable **2**) of advice to help them handle personal problems, as young people today **3**) many difficulties in their daily lives which may **4**) from something minor, such as an argument with a friend, to something serious such as bullying and abuse. Whatever the problem may be, teachers need to be there for their students.

Teachers also take on the role of motivator. That's why they often **5**) in special seminars where they are trained to encourage student motivation in the classroom. By putting this theory into **6**) they can inspire students to view learning as an enjoyable process. Therefore, good teachers do not simply focus on testing or examinations, but **7**) use of all available resources, in the **8**) of maintaining student interest and ultimately preparing them for their future.

All in all, the way a teacher treats a student can have a huge **9**) on their character and future achievements. Encouraging students to set goals and **10**) to them is extremely important and it is such encouragement that ultimately builds a **11**) relationship between teacher and student which will help them get **12**) well with each other.



- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 0 A play | B take | C make | D get |
| 1 A alone | B also | C only | D too |
| 2 A tips | B parts | C pieces | D portions |
| 3 A encounter | B receive | C deal | D see |
| 4 A extend | B wander | C stray | D range |
| 5 A attend | B enrol | C enter | D apply |
| 6 A effect | B work | C exercise | D practice |
| 7 A do | B make | C have | D take |
| 8 A desire | B need | C hope | D wish |
| 9 A impress | B impact | C result | D issue |
| 10 A stick | B attach | C connect | D settle |
| 11 A fixed | B stiff | C solid | D set |
| 12 A through | B in | C up | D on |

- 2** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

- 0** Do you think I could borrow your car?
WONDERING
I *was wondering if I could* borrow your car?
- 1** I was really surprised when I saw Jenny at the school dance. **EXPECT**
I Jenny at the school dance.
- 2** I had not expected Mary to be such a good singer. **TURNED**
Mary a really good singer.
- 3** Kate was rude to me and I got angry. **MADE**
Kate was so rude to me she my temper.
- 4** You shouldn't take any notice of gossip. **LISTEN**
If I were you, gossip.
- 5** I'm not going to move to London. **INTENTION**
I to London.
- 6** If I were you, I wouldn't wear jeans to work. **OUGHT**
In my opinion, jeans to work.
- 7** Fiona told me to arrive on time for the competition. **LATE**
Fiona advised for the competition.
- 8** John does not want to go out. **FEEL**
John going out.

- 3** Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 1** Alice is from America, but has been living in England for years. **ORIGIN**
- 2** Don't believe everything Sonia tells you; she's got a reputation for being **HONEST**
- 3** Ellen is very and is always trying to draw attention to herself. **DRAMA**
- 4** Mark is a businessman. **SUCCESS**
- 5** Look at Penny's clothes. They are so **FASHION**

1

Language
Knowledge

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- 1 "Do we have to hand in the assignment by Friday?"
"I'm afraid we've got choice."
A no any other C not another
B no other D not any other
- 2 I'm determined to travel to China much it costs.
A considering how C no matter how
B more over D whatever
- 3 "I'm so disorganised!"
"How about changing the order you do things?"
A in which C within that
B which D where
- 4 "It's not very polite to laugh a fellow classmate who gets an answer wrong."
"I am sorry, it won't happen again."
A with B at C to D for
- 5 My brothers are good at Maths.
A equally B unequal C equality D equal
- 6 "Basketball practice starts at 6 o'clock, it?"
"Yes, that's right."
A doesn't B won't C hasn't D isn't
- 7 of his suitcases was large enough to fit all his clothes.
A Both B Neither C Every D All
- 8 "Look at those graphics!"
"That picture must have been taken a professional camera."
A by B with C from D of
- 9 It is only the second time I Tim raise his hand in class.
A saw C see
B have seen D had seen
- 10 Fortunately, I find the USB stick I'd misplaced the other day.
A could C was able to
B managed in D succeeded to
- 11 The charity event attracted many celebrities, some of I knew by sight.
A whom B them C which D who
- 12 According to a study, three ten people find maths too challenging.
A from B of C in D for

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Sam has always loved paragliding and other outdoor
A actions C practices
B activities D strategies
- 2 What was Tanya's when you announced her promotion?
A reaction C action
B reflection D reception
- 3 When no one came to the door, she through the window to see if anyone was home.
A gazed B glanced C stared D peered
- 4 The art museum an entrance fee.
A prices C calculates
B values D charges
- 5 The students their goal of improving their grades by the end of the term.
A handled C accomplished
B controlled D succeeded
- 6 The art gallery is running an art competition in with the local council.
A influence C direction
B association D guidance
- 7 Do we have to tickets for the concert in advance?
A engage B conserve C reserve D retain
- 8 We're all working overtime as our department has a very deadline.
A tense B tight C stiff D close
- 9 How did the thieves gain into the museum?
A entry C entrance
B access D admission
- 10 Please take a seat in the waiting room and I'll be with you
A generally C shortly
B recently D quickly
- 11 It's totally to chew gum in class.
A unimpressive C harmful
B useless D unacceptable
- 12 Ben tried desperately to Jill, but she was driving too fast for him.
A catch up with C live up to
B take up with D join in with

Language Focus 1

1 Fill in with: *have, go, do*.

- 1 Do you have time to the shopping for me this afternoon?
- 2 Why don't we out for dinner tonight?
- 3 What time do you usually breakfast?
- 4 I plan to shopping this afternoon.

2 Fill in the words in their correct form.

• *value* • *honour* • *respect*

- 1 Many cultures their dead with annual festivals.
- 2 Most people freedom of speech.
- 3 It is important to your elders.

• *maintain* • *preserve* • *continue*

- 4 The Akha people try hard to their culture and traditions.
- 5 She tries hard to a youthful appearance.
- 6 Some villagers say they don't want to with the old way of life.

• *collect* • *gather* • *assemble*

- 7 Every Sunday, the village elders to discuss the week's events.
- 8 She told the children to their toys and come inside.
- 9 Citizens were told to in the Town Hall for the meeting.

3 Choose the odd word out.

- 1 optimistic – cheerful – generous – lazy
- 2 shoulder-length – wavy – pointed – curly
- 3 trainers – boots – sandals – jacket
- 4 nose – moustache – beard – fringe
- 5 skinny – overweight – obese – bald
- 6 arrogant – deceitful – indifferent – gentle

4 Look at the picture and complete the missing words.



This couple are wearing 1) sportswear. They are both wearing 2) jeans. The woman is wearing a bright-coloured, orange 3) while the man is wearing a blue one. They've both got 4) on their hands and are wearing brown 5) They are also holding skis. They look happy.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Are you in control **with/of** the situation?
- 2 If you don't know the meaning of the word, look it **down/up** in the dictionary.
- 3 I think Alex is taking advantage **over/of** Nathan.
- 4 I'm looking **after/over** my neighbour's cats while they're on holiday.
- 5 I am interested **in/with** learning more about the subject.

Word formation

6 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in bold.

Australia is many people's dream travel destination. It has picturesque terrain, exotic wildlife, and 1) (**excite**) cities. Australians believe in living life to the full. It is this 2) (**motivate**) that makes them so fun-loving, 3) (**courage**), and 4) (**adventure**). Visitors to Australia soon discover that Australians are very easy-going, 5) (**friend**), and have a "give it a go" attitude. They also discover Australians are very generous, but can be 6) (**patient**) at times.

▶ Grammar in Focus

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Then complete the gaps.

I 1) (**watch**) many great films in my life and seen a lot of talented actors, 2) the actor that I 3) (**like**) the most is Russell Crowe. Many of my friends 4) (**not/agree**), but in my opinion, he is the most talented actor working today. I 5) (**follow**) Russell's career ever 6) he was an unknown actor in Australia. Now, he is a Hollywood celebrity and he even 7) (**have**) a star on the Hollywood Walk of Fame! His roles in films 8) as *Gladiator* and *Robin Hood* 9) (**make**) him a household name and he 10) (**win**) many awards to date. Russell 11) (**not/just/act**) in Hollywood films; he is 12) a musician and he 13) (**release**) a number of albums so far! I 14) (**not/meet**) him in person, but he 15) like a nice person off-screen too.



1 Progress Check

Reading

- 1 a) Read the text and decide if the statements are *True* or *False*.

Sports Superstar!



Spanish tennis player Rafael Nadal - or "Rafa" as he is known to his fans - is one of the most interesting characters in sport today. When playing tennis, Rafa is fierce, fearless and confident. Sports journalists describe him as looking like an angry bull on court - eyebrows raised, lips curled, eyes burning a hole in his opponent. Yet, off court, Rafa is shy, sensitive and uncertain. He is afraid of dogs, spiders, and thunder and lightning. He is even afraid of sleeping in the dark!

It seems strange that a 6ft 1in, 85kg muscular athlete who is so confident on court, could be so unsure in real life. Rafa, the tennis player, is famous for his mental toughness, physical strength and aggressive playing style. His opponents know he will fight for every single point. His fans love the fact that he never gives up. However, the off-court Rafa is gentle and modest. Everyone who meets him says the same thing: he is 'educado', as they say in Spanish. Not so much educated in the formal sense (Rafa left school when he turned professional at 15), but educated in manners and character. Rafa is polite and respectful to everyone he meets. Indeed, even though Rafa is one of the best players in tennis history, he is probably the most humble No. 1 the game has ever known.

Rafa's fans also love his distinctive style. When Rafa first started playing professional tennis, he wore baggy, sleeveless shirts (that were always in very vivid colours), three-quarter length trousers and bandanas. Sports journalists said he looked like a pirate! No other player dressed like him. These days, Rafa sports a more traditional style. He wears a polo shirt and shorts cut above the knee - just like the rest of the players on tour. But he is still distinctive. His shirts are almost always tight-fitting. He also wears tennis shoes that have his nickname "Rafa" on the right shoe and a picture of a bull on the left.

Yet, even during the early days of his career when he dressed so distinctively on court, Rafa has always dressed normally - even conservatively - off court. Rafa's everyday clothes are shirts and V-neck sweaters. At parties he often wears a blazer. Rafa's dual personality and style has always been one of the most appealing things about him!

- 1 Rafael Nadal has a fear of storms and sleeping without a light on.
- 2 Rafa often gets into fights with opponents when he loses a single point.
- 3 Rafa has been playing tennis since the age of 15.
- 4 At the start of his career, sports journalists didn't think Rafa dressed like a tennis player.
- 5 Nowadays, Rafa wears sports clothes that more reflect his off-court style.

- b) Answer the questions in your own words.

- 1 How has Rafa's dress sense changed over the years?
- 2 What's the difference between Rafa's on and off court behaviour? (7x2=14)

Listening

- 2 Listen to a lecture about friendship and decide if statements 1-8 are *True* or *False*.

- 1 The lecture is taking place in the university where Dr Arken works.
- 2 Dr Arken has recently released a book about friendship.
- 3 Dr Arken states that animals have friends, too.
- 4 Dr Arken believes that having Internet friends does not mean they are true friends.
- 5 Dr Arken believes that a true friend is someone you see face to face.
- 6 Dr Arken believes that most people have a small number of true friends.
- 7 Dr Arken has a Twitter account.
- 8 Dr Arken thinks that it's impossible to make true friends over the Internet.

(8x1=8)

Speaking

- 3 Choose the correct response.

- 1 A: What is she like?
B: a She is jealous of me.
b She's gentle and polite.
- 2 A: This is my cousin, Sandra.
B: a Nice to meet you.
b I'm from London.
- 3 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: a I'm off now. b Never mind.
- 4 A: Hello! I'm Tony.
B: a Hi, Tony. I'm Becky.
b I know what you mean.
- 5 A: What does he look like?
B: a He's tall and slim.
b He's patient. (5x2=10)

Progress Check

1

Vocabulary

4 Fill in with: *complexion, originally, deceitful, harsh, behaviour, remarkably, conservative, seek, rich, provide.*

- 1 London is a city in history.
- 2 You have to follow a code of in the workplace.
- 3 Don't trust him; he's a person.
- 4 Alex has a high-paying job so he can his family with everything they need.
- 5 He is going to his fortune in the city.
- 6 The locals are friendly and welcoming to tourists.
- 7 He's got a pale and blue eyes.
- 8 Life in the desert is ; it's not easy at all.
- 9 He looks very in his white shirt, black tie and black trousers.
- 10 Historians believe Native Americans came to the American continent from Asia.

(10x2=20)

Grammar

5 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Nathan **has/is having** a bad day today.
- 2 Sam, have you fixed your watch **just/yet**?
- 3 I have **ever/never** been to Rome.
- 4 Mum, this apricot pie you made **tastes/is tasting** delicious!
- 5 I've been learning Italian **since/for** a long time.
- 6 I **have been trying/have tried** to find something nice to wear for hours.
- 7 I haven't done the dishes **yet/already**.
- 8 He **has/is having** an amazing apartment in the city.
- 9 They've been watching TV **since/from** the morning.
- 10 They have **yet/just** got back from the movies.

(10x1=10)

6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present tense.

- 1 What (you/do) since 10 o'clock this morning?
- 2 Katie (play) basketball with her friends every Thursday.
- 3 I (go) to a party tonight.
- 4 They (already/eat) dinner.
- 5 How often (you/read) a newspaper?
- 6 (she/surf) the Internet now?
- 7 They (talk) to each other for hours.
- 8 He looks tired because he (not/sleep) well.
- 9 When (she/move) to France? In May.
- 10 I (have) this hair colour for five years.

(10x1=10)

7 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Can you look **after/out** my cat while I'm away this weekend?
- 2 I am very attached **to/in** my family.
- 3 I look forward **to/about** meeting him when he arrives.
- 4 Why are you jealous **of/in** her?
- 5 Can you look **up/out** the number in the yellow pages, please?

(5x2=10)

Writing

8 Read the rubric, then write your email.

You are in New York attending a 4-week intensive English language course. Write an email (120-180 words) to your English pen-friend describing your new teacher. Include details of their appearance and personality.

(18 marks)

(Total=100)

Check your progress

- talk about people's appearance & character
- talk about clothes
- talk about jobs
- talk about family members
- introduce yourself & others
- ask about/give personal information
- ask about/express likes/dislikes
- describe a person
- write an email describing a person

GOOD ✓

VERY GOOD //

EXCELLENT ///

The Environment

Module 2

MODULE OBJECTIVES

► Vocabulary

- natural world
- animals
- environmental problems
- prepositional phrases
- phrasal verbs: *bring*
- word formation: forming nouns from verbs

► Reading

- multiple choice
- answer questions

► Grammar

- modals (*must, have to, need, should, ought to*)
- future tenses
- time words

► Listening

- an interview (true/false statements)
- a lecture (sentence completion, multiple choice)
- intonation: stress in questions

► Speaking

- making suggestions – agreeing/disagreeing
- making decisions

► Writing

- a paragraph suggesting ways to protect seahorses
- an essay providing solutions to a problem

► Language Focus

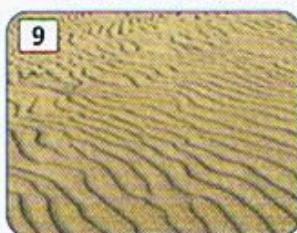
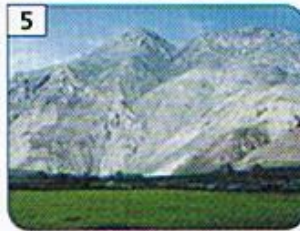
- phrasal verbs & prepositions
- word formation
- grammar in focus

► Progress Check

Our natural world

- 1** Which picture shows: *wild animals? mountains? birds? a river? the ocean? a lake? a forest? a desert? a waterfall?*

🔊 Listen and check, then say.



- 2** a) Fill in: *provide, cover, home, lack, shelter, areas, drop, insects*.

A They are one of nature's treasures. They are 1) with a lot of trees and 2) about 30% of the Earth's land surface. They provide food and 3) to people and animals.

B They take up 70% of the Earth's surface. They are 4) to some of the most amazing creatures on Earth. They 5) 50% of the Earth's oxygen.

C They occupy 1/5 of the Earth's land surface. It rarely rains there. Reptiles, 6), birds and mammals live there. They are hot and there is a 7) of water and plants. However, temperatures 8) at night.

b) Which of the pictures 1-9 does each text refer to? Translate the texts into Polish.

- 3** Which of the things in the pictures exist/don't exist in your country? Name some. Write a few sentences. Tell the class.

I live in ... In my country there are rivers. The longest one is the ... River. There are also forests. Some are ... coast, others are in ... There aren't any ..., though.



Why is it important to take care of the environment? In three minutes write a few sentences. Tell the class.

2a Reading

UNIQUE UNDERWATER CREATURES



A Seahorses are beautiful and unusual fish that have captured the imagination of writers and artists for millennia, and which feature in the ancient mythology, legends and folklore of many countries. Seahorses seem so magical that, to this very day, many people still believe they only exist in children's stories. But the fact is, these delicate and shy little creatures are very real!

B Scientists believe seahorses evolved at least 40 million years ago, and have survived from ancient times with only very small changes in their body structure and function. Seahorses have a peculiar appearance. They have a head like a horse, a pouch like a kangaroo, and a long, curved tail like a monkey. Their little bodies are covered in bony plates, not scales, and their tiny eyes resemble a chameleon's. Because of their confusing anatomy, for many years, people didn't know whether seahorses were a fish, an insect or a shellfish! Today, scientists know without a doubt that seahorses are fish because they have gills, a swim bladder and fins.

C Seahorses live mostly in shallow, warm waters. They are not strong swimmers, using only a back fin and a pair of tiny fins behind their eyes to push them through the water. Seahorses spend a lot of time attached to seaweed or sea grass. They are able to hang on to sea grass and seaweed by wrapping their tails around the stems, which helps them to avoid being swept away by strong currents. While they hang from sea grass, their long, tube-like mouth, which has no teeth, acts like a Hoover for food, sucking up plankton. Strangely, seahorses have no stomach so they can't store their food. This means they have to eat fairly continuously throughout the day.

D Another unique characteristic of seahorses is that they (along with their cousins, the pipefish) are the only creatures in the animal kingdom where the male, not the female, becomes pregnant and gives birth to babies! The female produces eggs and places them in a pouch inside the male, where they are fertilised. The male gives birth to between 5 and 200 young. Amazingly, just a few hours after the male gives birth, the female will once again place eggs in the male's pouch. What's more, it will be the same female because seahorses mate for life!

E Sadly, seahorses are in danger all over the world. Their habitats are being destroyed by human activities. People catch seahorses for pets and for souvenirs. In Asia, people believe seahorses have magical powers so they are used in traditional Chinese medicine. The most endangered seahorse in the world is the Knysna seahorse, which is only found in South Africa. The reason it is in grave danger is that it has an exceptionally limited distribution range – it is only found in three estuaries in the whole of South Africa. Unless these estuaries are conserved, South Africa will lose its only seahorse species for good.

1 a) Look at the photograph. What is this fish? What do you know about it?

b) Check the words below in the Word List. Use them to describe the fish's peculiar appearance.

- horse-like head • tiny eyes
- long pointed nose • pouch
- sharp spikes • no limbs
- bony plates • no scales
- gills • long curved tail
- swim bladder • fins

Check these words

- capture imagination • millennia • feature • folklore • evolve
- survive • body structure • function • peculiar • pouch • scales
- resemble • chameleon • shellfish • gills • shallow waters
- attached (to) • seaweed • wrap • stem • sweep (away) • current
- suck (up) • pipefish • pregnant • fertilise • mate • grave danger
- exceptionally limited • distribution range • estuary • conserve

STUDY SKILLS

Getting the main idea

Every paragraph contains a main idea. Finding the main idea of each paragraph helps us understand what the text is about.

2 Read the text quickly. What is the main idea in each paragraph?

3 Choose the best answer according to the text. Give reasons for your answers. What style is the text written in: *formal* or *informal*? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

- Some people are convinced that seahorses
 - are too small and timid to survive.
 - are imaginary creatures.
 - should feature in more children's stories.
 - have the ability to perform magic.
- Scientists believe modern-day seahorses
 - look very similar to prehistoric seahorses.
 - are able to change their body structure.
 - may be related to the chameleon.
 - have poor eyesight.
- Seahorses attach themselves to seaweed and sea grass
 - in order to eat it.
 - using their mouths and tails.
 - to stay safe in rough waters.
 - when they want to travel long distances.
- Eating for seahorses
 - is difficult as they don't have teeth.
 - takes up a lot of their time.
 - involves storing plankton in their bodies.
 - requires them to chew continuously.
- When it comes to reproduction, seahorses
 - like to mate with as many different seahorses as possible.
 - are the only fish where the males give birth.
 - are pregnant more or less continuously.
 - give birth to very small numbers of young.
- The Knysna seahorse
 - is the rarest of South Africa's three seahorse species.
 - is used as medicine in some cultures.
 - is found throughout South Africa.
 - is in more danger than any other seahorse species.

4 Listen and read the text. Answer the questions in your own words.

- What characteristics make seahorses fish?
- How do seahorses reproduce?
- Why is the Knysna seahorse an endangered species?

5 Find words or phrases in the text that mean the opposite of:

- ordinary (para A)
- deep (para C)
- common (para D)

6 Find words in the text that mean:

- fragile (para A)
- strange (para B)
- non-stop (para C)
- pair off (para D)
- most serious (para E)

7 Complete the summary. Use these words: *curved, mate, bony, currents, gives, shallow, store, catch, peculiar, lost, attach, places, grave.*

Seahorses are fish with a 1) appearance. They have a 2) tail and 3) plates. They live in 4) warm waters. They can't swim well so they 5) themselves to seaweed so that strong 6) won't sweep them away. They eat most of the time because they have no stomach to 7) food. The male seahorse 8) birth to babies. The female 9) the eggs in the male's pouch. Seahorses 10) for life. Unfortunately, they are in danger because people 11) them for pets or souvenirs. The Knysna seahorse is in 12) danger. If we don't protect it, this species will be 13) for good.



? Did you Know?

Less than 1% of young seahorses make it to adulthood.



- What did you know about seahorses? What did you learn from the text? Write sentences or tell your partner either in English or in Polish.
- Write a few sentences about how to protect seahorses. Tell the class.



ICT Collect information about another animal that is endangered. Write a paragraph explaining the reasons why and the consequences. Tell the class.

2b

Vocabulary



Vocabulary from the text

1 Replace the underlined words with words in the list in their correct form: *evolve, resemble, grave, capture, hang on, peculiar.*

- 1 These beautiful animals have caught the imagination of writers.
- 2 They changed form and developed into different forms a long time ago.
- 3 Their appearance is very strange.
- 4 Their eyes look like a chameleon's.
- 5 They usually hold on to sea grass.
- 6 The Knysna seahorse is in very serious danger.

2 Fill in: *refrain, destroy, prevent, damage, avoid.*

- 1 Please from eating too much chocolate. It's bad for the teeth.
- 2 When hiking, wear boots if you want to being bitten by a snake.
- 3 We humans will completely the Amazon rainforest if we are not careful.
- 4 Acid rain can cause a lot of to forests.
- 5 Wearing sunscreen will you from getting sunburnt.

3 Fill in: *in, at, without, to.*

- 1 Dinosaurs have been extinct for least 65 million years.
- 2 a doubt, Einstein was one of the greatest scientists ever.
- 3 In humans, skeletal muscles are attached bones.
- 4 Cats usually give birth between one and eight kittens.
- 5 Male seahorses are the only creatures the animal kingdom that give birth babies.
- 6 Many plant and animal species are danger of extinction.

Topic vocabulary Types of animals

4 Choose the correct word.
🔊 Listen and check.

Cheetahs, the fastest animals on Earth, are 1) *endangered/threatened* by habitat 2) *loss/waste* because people cut down trees. People also hunt them for their spotted pelt. Farmers kill them in order to 3) *protect/preserve* their livestock.



The **blue whale**, the 4) *biggest/largest* of all whales, is now legally 5) *supported/protected* against hunting and killing. There are only 2,500 left.

The **Mediterranean monk seal** is in 6) *danger/trouble* because people hunt it for its skin and because they get 7) *trapped/grabbed* in fishing nets. Nowadays, a lot of countries protect this species by 8) *law/rule*.



The **Thailand giant catfish** is 9) *meeting/facing* 10) *extinction/disappearance* due to overfishing and habitat loss.

5 a) Read the definitions.

mammals: warm-blooded animals that give birth to live babies and feed their young on milk

reptiles: cold-blooded animals which have scaly skin and lay eggs

amphibians: animals that live both on land and in water

fish: cold-blooded creatures that live in water and usually have gills and fins

rodents: small mammals with sharp front teeth

birds: creatures with feathers and wings

insects: small animals that have six legs and most of them have wings

b) Which type of animal are each of the animals below? Decide in pairs.

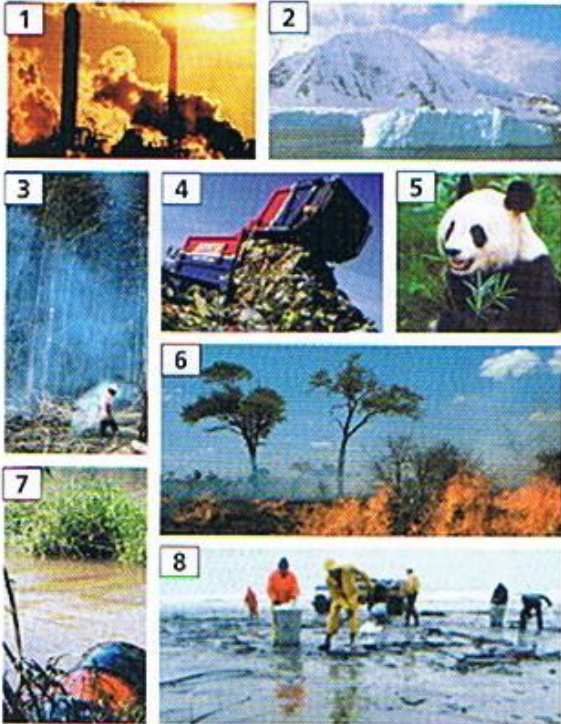
🔊 Listen and check.

- mouse • fly • monkey • whale • beetle • frog
- dolphin • seal • eagle • squirrel • butterfly • parrot
- crocodile • toad • tuna • jaguar • iguana • salmon
- kangaroo • chameleon • bear

Environmental problems

6 Match the environmental problems (A-H) to the pictures (1-8).

- | | |
|--|---|
| A <input type="checkbox"/> deforestation | E <input type="checkbox"/> endangered species |
| B <input type="checkbox"/> forest fire | F <input type="checkbox"/> landfills full of rubbish |
| C <input type="checkbox"/> air pollution | G <input type="checkbox"/> oil spill |
| D <input type="checkbox"/> melting ice caps | H <input type="checkbox"/> water pollution |



7 Match the environmental problems (1-7) to the solutions (a-g). Then discuss in pairs, as in the example.



Environmental Problems	Solutions
1 <input type="checkbox"/> disappearing forests	a turn off lights when we don't need them
2 <input type="checkbox"/> endangered animals	b use taps carefully
3 <input type="checkbox"/> polluted beaches	c use public transport
4 <input type="checkbox"/> energy waste	d recycle rubbish
5 <input type="checkbox"/> air pollution	e clean up the coastline
6 <input type="checkbox"/> global water shortage	f stop hunting them
7 <input type="checkbox"/> landfills full of rubbish	g plant trees

A: How can we solve the problem of disappearing forests?
 B: We can plant trees.

Prepositional phrases

8 Choose the correct preposition in bold. Check in the Word List. Make sentences using the prepositional phrases.

- A lot of animals are **at/in** risk of extinction.
- We must **protect** habitats **of/from** disappearing.
- You can help **save** animals **of/from** extinction.
- Seahorses **rely on/with** camouflage to **hide of/from** predators.
- 'Wildlife' means animals living **at/in** the wild.

Word formation (forming nouns from verbs)

9 Complete each sentence with the nouns derived from the words in bold.

We form nouns from verbs using the following suffixes: **-ion** (prevent-prevention), **-ation** (converse-conversation), **-sion** (explode-explosion), **-tion** (suggest-suggestion)

- Recycling helps control environmental (POLLUTE)
- In, both people and animals will benefit if laws are made to abolish illegal animal trading. (CONCLUDE)
- The animal shelter has announced that there will be a in staff because of financial difficulties. (REDUCE)
- There's a great of documentaries about endangered species to watch. (COLLECT)
- There is a meeting on whale next Monday. (CONSERVE)

Phrasal verbs: BRING

10 Choose the correct particle. Check in the Word List.



- His new book about endangered species will be brought **about/out** this May. (be published)
- Environmentalists helped to bring **about/round** a change in the law. (caused to happen)
- She managed to bring **out/up** her three children on her own. (raise)
- He brought **up/about** the issue of saving the whales during the seminar. (mentioned)
- He fainted, but the doctor brought him **about/round**. (regained consciousness)

2c Grammar in use

Modal Verbs

You **should/ought to** respect the environment.

A



You **mustn't** hunt endangered species.

B

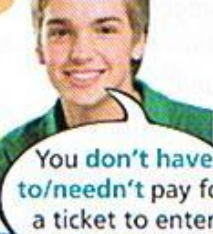


C

You **must/have to** use public transport in order to reduce pollution.



D



You **don't have to/needn't** pay for a ticket to enter the zoo.

- *prohibition* (it's wrong/against the law/it's forbidden)?
- *advice/suggestion* (it's the right thing to do/it's a good idea)?
- *obligation/duty/necessity* (it's your duty/you are obliged to)?
- *lack of necessity* (it's not necessary)?

▶ see p. 152 (GR3)

1 Match the modals in bold to their uses. Are there similar structures in Polish?

2 Read the sentences and choose the correct words. Listen and check.

- 1 We **mustn't/should** all do what we can to protect the environment.
- 2 You **mustn't/don't have to** buy products made from endangered species.
- 3 More people **ought to/mustn't** recycle.
- 4 People **mustn't/don't have to** use their cars for short distances when they can walk.
- 5 We **needn't/mustn't** damage coral reefs.
- 6 Making your house environmentally friendly **needn't/mustn't** cost a lot of money.
- 7 We **ought to/mustn't** put our litter in a bin and not throw it on the street.
- 8 It's a good idea to adopt an animal; more people **should/mustn't** do it.

3 Rewrite the sentences using appropriate modal verbs.

- 1 It's against the law to hunt blue whales.
*We **mustn't** hunt blue whales.*
- 2 It's a good idea to join an environmental group.
- 3 It's against the law to hunt cheetahs.
.....
- 4 It's the right thing to protect endangered species.
- 5 It's wrong to hunt animals for their fur.
.....

Will/Going to

- 1 Look at those dark clouds! It's **going to** rain.
- 2 I'm **going to** join Greenpeace this year.
- 3 I think he **will** succeed.

▶ see pp. 152 (GR3) - 153 (GR4)

4 Match sentences 1-3 to what they express: a prediction based on what we think/believe, a future plan/intention, a prediction based on what we see. Check in the Grammar Reference Section. Are there similar structures in Polish?

5 Fill in: *will* or *am/is/are going to*.

- 1 A: What are you doing this afternoon, Bob?
B: I clean up the park.
Come with me.
- 2 A: Have you taken the recycling to the centre?
B: Sorry. I do it later.
- 3 A: I'm helping at the animal shelter today.
B: I think I join you.
- 4 A: Where is Ann going?
B: To the beach. She meet Peter and help pick up litter.
- 5 A: Where are all these people going?
B: To the park. They plant some new trees.

Future continuous/Future Perfect

- 1 This time next week, I'll **be travelling** to Spain.
- 2 This time next week, I'll **have finished** my project.
- 3 I'll **be seeing** Ann tonight.

▶ see p. 153 (GR4)

6 a) Read the examples 1-3. Which verb form expresses: a previously arranged action? an action in progress at a certain time in the future? an action finished before a certain future time? Check in the Grammar Reference section. Are there similar structures in Polish?

b) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 A: How long have you been a member of this environmental group?
B: By the end of June, I (be) with them for a year.
- 2 A: Aren't you meeting Bob at the animal shelter?
B: By the time we get there, he (leave).
- 3 A: This time tomorrow, I (walk) to work.
B: Oh, yes. It's 'No Car Day'!
- 4 A: We (clean up) the park by tonight.
B: That's great.

7 What will you be doing: at 6 o'clock tomorrow afternoon? at 8:30 Sunday evening? What will you have done by the time you are 30?

Deductions/Assumptions

- She **must be** tired. (I'm sure she is.)
- She **can't still be** working. (I'm sure she isn't.)
- She **may move** to London. (It's possible.)
- She **must have known** he wasn't coming. (I'm sure she didn't.)
- She **can't have lost** the keys. (I'm sure she didn't.)
- She **may/might not have reached** home yet. (It's possible she didn't.)

▶ see p. 154 (GR5)

8 Study the table. Which sentences refer to the: present? past? Which express: positive/negative deduction? uncertainty? Which modals are used for each type?

9 Look at the picture and make sentences using the phrases. Use *must*, *may* or *can't*.

- be friends • rain before
- work since morning
- be summer • look happy
- do this before • feel cold
- collect clothes • be on holiday
- belong to an environmental group • start early



Time Clauses

He'll come as soon as he finishes work.
I'll leave when she gets here. (time word)
BUT: When will she get here? (question word)

▶ see p. 153 (GR4)

10 a) Read the examples. What tense do we use after time words (*when, until, before, as soon as, after, etc*) to refer to the future?

b) Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or future. Compare with your partner.

- 1 We should help the environment before it (be) too late.
- 2 We (wait) until we have enough volunteers.
- 3 She (start) a clean-up campaign before she goes to college.
- 4 What will he do after he (finish) school?
- 5 She wants to be an environmentalist when she (grow up).

11 Choose the correct item.

We can all do a number of simple things that 1) will/should make a big difference to the environment and we 2) don't have to/mustn't change our lifestyles very much either. For example, if you insulate your home, you help the environment and save on your energy bills. Also, you 3) should/need check the settings on your central heating and your fridge. If you 4) turn/ are going to turn the temperature down just a few degrees, you 5) will/must save money and energy 6) before/when you know it. You 7) should/ ought also switch all the light bulbs in your house to energy-efficient ones and by this time next year you'll 8) be paying/have paid a lot less.

Sentence transformations


12 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use appropriate modal verbs.

- 1 It's the right thing to help protect endangered species.
We
- 2 It's not necessary to water the plants.
You
- 3 It's a good idea to turn off lights when you don't need them.
You
- 4 It's against the law to drop litter in the street.
You
- 5 You are obliged to keep your dog on a short lead near farm animals.
You

2d Listening skills

- 1** a) You will hear an interview with a scientist about lions. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

• *game reserves* • *habitat loss* • *hunting*
 • *accidental poisoning* • *vanish*
 • *critically endangered species list*
 • *poacher* • *breed*

- b)  Listen to the dialogue and decide if each sentence is *True* or *False*. Is the dialogue *formal* or *informal*? Check on p. 165.

- 1 Most lions live in national parks and game reserves.
- 2 Three decades ago, there were 180,000 more lions in the wild.
- 3 Most experts agree it is probably too late to save the lion.
- 4 Many lions are killed by mistake.
- 5 Dr Richards is trying to raise money to save lions.

- c) What did you learn from the interview about lions? Why are lions in danger? What do you think has caused this? What can you do to help? Tell your partner.

Stress in questions

- 2** a) Read the sentences and find the stressed syllables.

- 1 Can you tell us why lions are in danger?
- 2 How many lions should there be in the wild?
- 3 Can lions be saved from extinction?
- 4 What can we do to help?

- b)  Listen and check, then say.

- 3** Read the facts. Why is the Amazon Rainforest important?

Amazon Rainforest
FACTS & FIGURES
Over half the planet's remaining rainforest is in the Amazon.


- One in ten known species in the world lives there.
- More than 20% of the world's oxygen is produced there.

- 4** a) You will hear a lecture about forests. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

• *raise awareness* • *oxygen supply*
 • *land surface* • *urban areas* • *cures*
 • *life-threatening diseases* • *medicinal uses*

- b)  Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 Forests keep the world's climate
- 2 They are home to over 50% of the world's
- 3 Nowadays, rainforests represent about 5%
- 4 Rainforest plants could provide us life-threatening diseases.
- 5 To help protect rainforests, we mustn't waste

- 5**  Listen again and for questions 1-5 choose the correct answer A, B or C.

- 1 Less than ten percent of the Earth's land mass
 - A is home to wildlife.
 - B is covered by rainforests.
 - C produces the world's oxygen supply.
- 2 Which is NOT mentioned as a reason that trees are cut down?
 - A to clear for farmland
 - B to develop towns
 - C to reduce land surface
- 3 One hundred and thirty-seven rainforest species
 - A are becoming extinct every day.
 - B have been tested.
 - C are cut down for wood.
- 4 What does Jeremy suggest we should do to help rainforests?
 - A use less paper
 - B recycle wooden furniture
 - C buy paper online
- 5 Jeremy believes that people
 - A do not love this planet.
 - B are very sad about the planet.
 - C often don't remember their duty.

- 6** What did you learn from the lecture about rainforests? What are the consequences of rainforests disappearing? How can you help to save them? Write a few sentences. Tell your partner.

Speaking skills **2e**

Suggestions

- 1** a) Julie is having a problem with her electricity bill. Her friend is suggesting ways to reduce energy waste.
 Listen and read to find out what her friend suggests.



Bill: Hi, Julie. What's wrong?
 Julie: Hi, Bill. I just can't believe it! My electricity bill was really expensive last month.
 Bill: You must be wasting a lot of energy. You should save electricity to help the environment as well as to save money.
 Julie: OK. What do you suggest?
 Bill: First of all, maybe you could turn the lights off when you leave a room.
 Julie: Good thinking. I'd save a lot of money on my bills.
 Bill: Why don't you buy energy-saving light bulbs, too?
 Julie: That's an excellent idea! What else would you suggest?
 Bill: How about shutting your computer down when you're not using it?
 Julie: I'm not sure about that. I often download music and need to keep it running. How about if I used a screensaver instead?
 Bill: That would certainly save energy from your monitor.
 Julie: Thanks, Bill. You've been a big help.
 Bill: You're welcome.

- b) Take roles and read the dialogue aloud.

- 2** Use phrases from the language in the table and the ideas below to act out a dialogue suggesting other ways to save energy at home.

- only use your washing machine/dishwasher when it is full
- turn off all appliances when you are not using them
- remove the phone charger from the socket when your phone has charged
- make sure windows and doors are closed when heating/air conditioning is on

Making suggestions	Agreeing/Disagreeing
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How/What about (+ -ing form) ...? • Let's (+ bare infinitive) ... • Why not (+ bare infinitive) ...? • Perhaps/Maybe you/we could ... • Why don't you/we ...? • You/We should ... 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • That sounds great. • I think it's a great idea. • That's an excellent idea! • Good thinking. • Yes, I suppose you're right. • OK. Why not? • OK. What do you suggest? • I don't think it's a good idea. • I don't think so. • I'm not sure about that. • How about ... instead?

Making decisions

- 3** a) The pictures show some possible ways to save energy at school. In pairs complete the sentences with: *install solar panels, energy-saving ones, turning on the air-conditioning, turn off lights, put stickers.*



- 1 If we all when classrooms are empty, we can save energy.
- 2 How about replacing all the light bulbs with?
- 3 Why don't we on the computers to remind us to shut them down?
- 4 It would be a good idea to open windows instead of when it's hot.
- 5 Perhaps the school could to power the heating.

b) Listen to a pair suggesting ways to save energy at school. What reasons do they give? Do you agree with them? Why/Why not? What would happen if we adopted the ideas above.

2f

Writing An essay providing solutions to a problem

▶ Writing Bank 2 p. 143 (WB2)

Rubric analysis

- 1** Read the rubric. What do you have to do? Choose the correct answer A, B or C.

You have had a class discussion about air pollution. Your teacher has asked you to write an essay discussing ways on how to reduce air pollution. Write your essay (120-180 words).

- A Write your opinion on the topic.
 B Write your suggestions on how to solve the problem.
 C Write only what the problem and its causes are.

Model analysis

- 2** Read the model. Answer the questions.

1 Pollution of the Earth's atmosphere has reached frightening proportions. This is largely due to the growth of industry and increased use of private vehicles. So what can be done about this problem?

2 One effective solution is for people to leave their cars at home and use public transport instead. By doing this, there would be less exhaust fumes and air pollution levels would be reduced.

3 Another solution is to plant more trees in urban areas. Then, as the trees absorb harmful gases such as carbon monoxide and breathe out oxygen, the air in our cities will become cleaner.

4 Thirdly, it is important to save energy. Power stations contribute to air pollution. By turning off lights and appliances when we don't need them, we help reduce the pollution problem.

5 In conclusion, I strongly believe that trying to reduce air pollution is something which involves us all. Everyone must take action before it is too late.



- 1 What problem is the essay about? Which paragraph states it?
- 2 What solutions does the writer suggest?
- 3 What results can each solution have?
- 4 Which paragraph summarises the writer's opinion?
- 5 What style is the essay written in? Give reasons.

STUDY SKILLS

Topic/Supporting sentences

In essays the main body paragraphs should begin with topic sentences. A topic sentence introduces or summarises the main topic of the paragraph and gives the reader an idea of what the paragraph is about. A topic sentence should be followed by supporting sentences which provide examples, results, reasons, justifications to support the topic sentence.

- 3** a) Find the topic sentences in the main body paragraphs. Does each introduce a new topic? Do the rest of the sentences in each paragraph further explain the topic sentence?

b) Replace the topic sentences with other appropriate ones.

- 4** a) Read the paragraphs below. What problem is each about?

A We can buy loose fruit, vegetables, cheese, meat and fish. We can also take our own shopping bags to the supermarket and avoid using plastic ones. By doing this we can reduce the amount of rubbish we create.

B We can turn off the tap when running water is not necessary. This way we help prevent water shortages.

C We can stop buying products made of ivory, coral, reptile skin or tortoiseshell. This way, we help protect endangered species.

b) Write appropriate topic sentences for the paragraphs in Ex. 4a.

- 5** Expand the notes to form topic and supporting sentences, as in the example. Use phrases from the Useful Language box.

1 encourage people/use public transport – there be/few cars on streets

A useful solution is to encourage people to use public transport. This way there will be fewer cars on the streets.

2 move factories/the countryside – air in cities/be cleaner

3 avoid buying products/endangered species – protect endangered animals

4 organise clean-up days/keep local parks/beaches/clean

5 start recycling – reduce/amount of rubbish

STUDY SKILLS

Planning an essay providing solutions to a problem

Before you start writing an essay providing solutions to a problem, think of possible solutions and examples to support each solution you suggest. Then organise your notes into paragraphs. This will help you write your essay.

Your turn

- 6 Read the rubric. What problem are you going to write about?

You've had a class discussion on the following topic: **Every year more and more animals are facing extinction. We must all help protect endangered species.** Your teacher has asked you to write an essay providing solutions to the problem (120-180 words).



- 7 Look at the notes. Which are solutions? Which are results?



- 8 Use phrases from the Useful Language box to write sentences joining each solution to its expected result.

A useful solution is ... This way, ...

- 9 Check the theory in the Writing Bank. Then write your essay. Use ideas from Exs 7 & 8. Follow the plan. Don't use short verb forms. Start each main body paragraph with a topic sentence.

Useful Language

Introducing topic sentences providing solutions

- A useful/effective solution/suggestion is ...
- Another solution is ...
- Another way to solve the problem is ...
- It is a good idea to ...
- It could help if ...

Introducing supporting sentences presenting possible results

- This way,/In this way, • Then,
- As a result, • By doing this, we can ...
- If we do this, the result can be ...

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *state the problem and/or its causes*

Main Body

(Para 2) *first suggestion and expected result*

(Para 3) *second suggestion and expected result*

(Para 4) *third suggestion and expected result*

Conclusion

(Para 5) *summarise your opinion*



Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for the following:

- Have you stated the problem and its causes?
- Have you stated your opinion?
- Are your paragraphs well-structured?
- Do the main body paragraphs start with an appropriate topic sentence?
- Do the supporting sentences further explain the main idea of the topic sentence?
- Have you presented each suggestion together with its result?
- Have you used full verb forms?
- Is your essay within the word length?
- Are there any spelling/grammar/punctuation mistakes?

1 Think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).



The Daintree

The Daintree is 0) an ancient tropical rainforest stretching for 95 km

1) the far north coast of Queensland, Australia. At 100 million years old, it is the world's oldest rainforest. The Daintree is also known 2) the "planet's nursery" due to the 3) that the majority of the Earth's tree and flower species originate from there. Some of these plants, 4) the massive king tree fern, were around when dinosaurs walked the earth! The Daintree's extraordinary biodiversity includes many species of rare animals not found anywhere 5) on earth, like the southern cassowary, a tall, flightless bird, and the tree kangaroo. All of 6) unique qualities led to the Daintree becoming a World Heritage site in 1988. Not surprisingly, the Daintree 7) become a popular destination for eco-tourism, with tens 8) thousands of visitors coming every year. 9) you have to choose your season, summer is extremely hot and wet, 10) torrential rains making many areas inaccessible. However, during winter, 25°C sunny days make perfect conditions for exploring 11) magnificent tropical rainforest region, unofficially 12) of the natural wonders of the world.

2 Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The Great Barrier Reef

When Captain Cook sailed up the 0) *unchartered* east coast of Australia for the first time, he was not prepared for the 1) of the Great Barrier Reef, which extended for over 1000 km, and was very 2) in places. Cook's ship ran aground several times and the coral tore 3) into the hull, causing severe damage. When he finally made it to the far north coast, Cook named its 4) most point, Cape Tribulation, for the difficult time he had navigating a safe 5) These days, the Great Barrier Reef is a marine park of world 6) and a favourite international diving 7) The turquoise 8) waters are still home to thousands of marine species, from 9) coloured tropical fish to translucent manta rays and delicate seahorses. But the tall white ships are long gone and now glass bottom boats cruise through the 10) marine environment.

- CHART
- VAST
- DANGER
- DEEP
- NORTH
- PASS
- SIGNIFY
- LOCATE
- TROPIC
- BRIGHT
- MAGIC

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

0 They say the cheetah is an endangered species. **SAID**

The cheetah *is said to be* an endangered species.

1 The young boy said he would not pick up the rubbish he had dropped.

REFUSED

The young boy the rubbish he had dropped.

2 People still hunt elephants for their tusks even though it is illegal.

FACT

People still hunt elephants for their tusks despite illegal.

3 If the situation doesn't improve soon, more species will become extinct. **IMPROVEMENT**

Unless the situation, more species will become extinct.

4 Experts are worried about the level of air pollution. **WORRIES**

What the level of air pollution.

5 Not many people realise how important recycling is.

UNDERSTAND

Very important recycling is.

6 It was up to Sarah to decide where they should go for dinner. **MAKE**

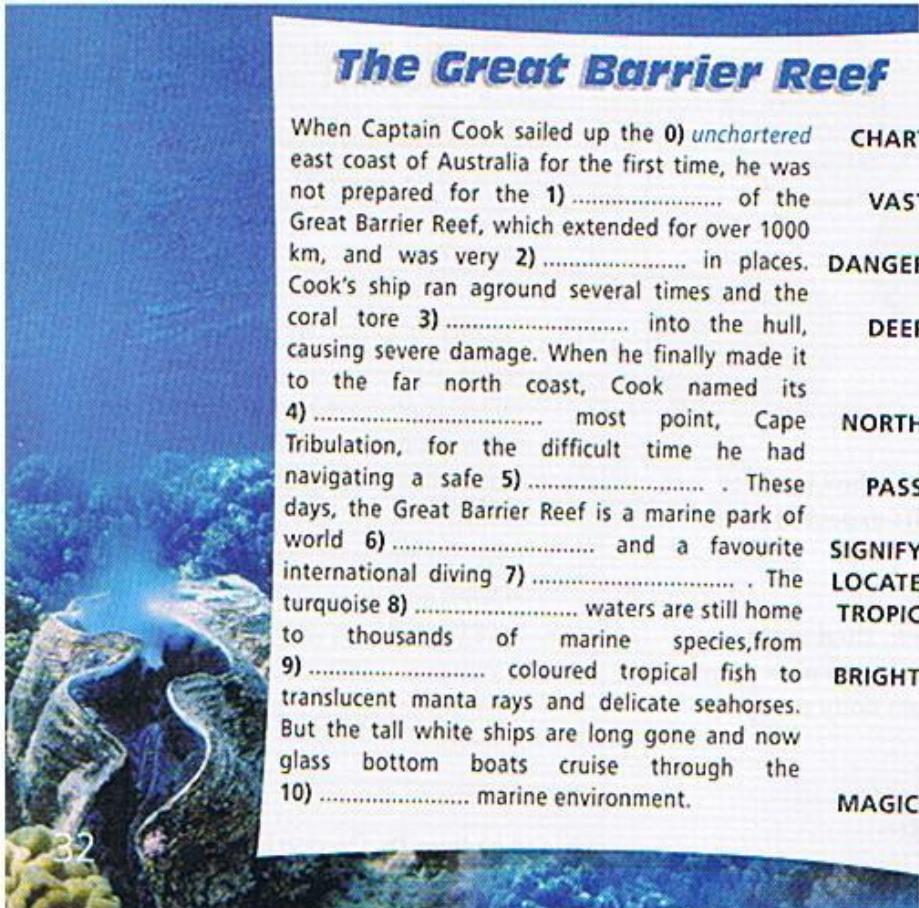
Sarah had about where they should go for dinner.

7 "Does all the rubbish go to a landfill site?" Clara asked. **WHETHER**

Clara asked went to a landfill site.

8 Paul's involvement in politics began at university. **INVOLVED**

Paul has he was at university.



Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- My teacher me to research all my options before I applied to a specific university.
A recommended C advised
B suggested D insisted
- The curator asked us any of the statues.
A to not touch C not touching
B please stop touching D not to touch
- "You know, we're running out of time on this project." "It's precisely we need more time that we should ask for an extension."
A since that C though
B due to D because
- "Can you afford such an expensive car and maintain it?" "Yes, I've recently been promoted."
A to buying C to buy
B buying D buy
- "The textile factory caught fire yesterday." "I know! The flames several miles away."
A could be seen C could see
B saw D were seeing
- The local residents were the council's decision to demolish the old theatre.
A disappointed of C disappointed to
B disappointed from D disappointed with
- her inexperience, she gave an impressive performance.
A Because of C However
B Although D In spite of
- "Which one of computer games should I buy Todd for his birthday?" "I think he'd like that one."
A this B them C these D theirs
- We cleared up the beach without the help of volunteers.
A never have C could never have
B may not be D had never
- "Have you seen my mobile anywhere?" "Yes, you've left it on the"
A kitchen's table C kitchen table
B kitchen tables D kitchens' table
- I spent weekend revising for my final exams.
A most of the C the most of the
B most of D the most

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- Charles did all sorts of jobs to a living.
A gain B earn C win D take
- Angie has the to become a champion tennis player.
A potential C advantage
B efficiency D operation
- I picked up the phone, dialled the number, but realised the line was
A empty B dead C wasted D beat
- A recent study that there is a connection between poverty and crime.
A calculates C records
B expresses D indicates
- I didn't realise setting up my own business so much hard work.
A engaged C involved
B surrounded D contained
- She was sitting in the of a large apple tree.
A shade B shadow C darkness D cover
- The T-shirts and sweaters cost £15 and £30
A simultaneously C primarily
B cooperatively D respectively
- There was such a wide range of goods on that I didn't know what to buy.
A exhibition C display
B shop D shelves
- The news of her transfer to another branch as a real surprise to Muriel.
A went B made C came D was
- I really enjoy science, but my brother is with it this year.
A struggling C conflicting
B fighting D worrying
- Stephen likes old motorbikes and putting them back together again.
A destroying C dismantling
B uncovering D demolishing
- Stan was from school for playing truant.
A expelled C evacuated
B excluded D extracted
- Hanna has a good knowledge of Chinese.
A obtained C registered
B acquired D accessed

1 Fill in the words in their correct form.• *develop* • *grow* • *evolve* • *expand*

- Most scientists believe human beings in Africa.
- Mountain gorillas slowly – they don't reach maturity until they are about 12 years old.
- Puffer fish have the ability to their body when threatened in order to frighten off predators.
- Bamboo at an astonishingly rapid rate – up to 100 cm in 24 hours.

• *remain* • *survive* • *last* • *continue*

- It looks unlikely the tiger the century.
- I'm afraid the pain from the snakebite a long time.
- If the destruction of the Amazon Rainforest, temperatures will rise.
- Scientists estimate less than 1,600 giant pandas in the wild.

• *trouble* • *threat* • *risk* • *danger*

- Many plant species are in of extinction.
- The documentary shows that sharks are in big worldwide.
- Humans pose a greater to sharks, than vice versa.
- Elephants and rhinos are at from poachers.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

2 Choose the correct item.

- We must protect the world's oceans **by/from** overfishing.
- I think animals should live **at/in** the wild, not **in/on** captivity.
- How many plant species are **in/on** danger of extinction **in/at** the Amazon?
- Poaching and habitat destruction are just two reasons why tigers are **with/at** risk of extinction.
- Environmentalists **around/over** the world are fighting hard to save the Earth's fauna **from/over** extinction.
- They'll bring the new film **round/out** next month.
- Dr Ian Murray brought **up/about** the issue of deforestation during the meeting.
- What brought **about/out** the disappearance of dinosaurs?

Word Formation

3 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in bold.

The jaguar is the largest cat in the Americas. It has a big head and **1** (**power**) jaws. Its coat is yellow with black spots. Its **2** (**high**) is up to 76 cm and it weighs up to 113 kg. Jaguars live and hunt **3** (**lone**). They love the water. It is an **4** (**danger**) species in the USA. Human **5** (**populate**) growth and agricultural **6** (**expand**) are their main threats.

4 Write the noun form of the words below in your notebooks.

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1 pollute | 4 appear | 7 conserve |
| 2 extinct | 5 continue | 8 protect |
| 3 imagine | 6 destroy | 9 preserve |

▶ Grammar in Focus

Complete the gaps with the correct word. Then put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

50% of the Earth's species **1** (**disappear**) by the end of this century according to Dr Richard Leakey. He says that people are using almost half the energy available to sustain life on the planet and the figure **2** (**grow**) as our population grows. This threatens every form of life on Earth including people. We **3** do something to stop it before it **4** (**be**) too late. We **5** to stop hunting animals as this puts a lot of species **6** risk of extinction. Overfishing and pollution are two other factors that threaten species **7** extinction. Cutting tropical rainforests, which are home **8** half of the world's species, in order to build towns and cities or roads, puts species **9** danger. What **10** (**the future/hold**) for the planet? **11** (**other species/appear**) or can this be the end of the world?

2

Progress
Check

Reading

- 1 a) Read the text and decide which answer A, B, C or D is correct.

FEROCIOUS
FLORA

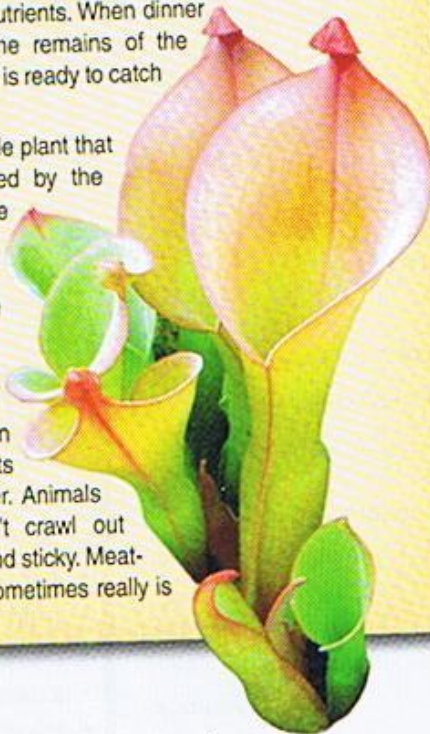
Normally, plants get all the nutrients they need to grow from the soil. But in waterlogged habitats like wetlands and swamps, the water has washed away most of the nutrients from the ground making it difficult for many plants to

survive there. But some plants do very well in the harsh conditions of wetlands. They are carnivorous plants. Unlike all other plants on Earth, carnivorous plants don't have to get the nutrients they need to grow from the ground. They get them by eating animal flesh instead.

Carnivorous plants use the sneakiest of tricks to trap their animal dinners. First, they attract animals to them. Some do this by secreting a sweet, sugary liquid. Others produce beautiful bright flowers or an irresistible smell. Next, they trap the animal. Here's where things get really clever. Some carnivorous plants snap their leaves tightly shut around animals to create a plant prison. Others produce a sticky glue substance that makes it impossible for animals to escape. Some even use their leaves to create a deep tube filled with rain water to drown their prey.

What happens next? Once an animal is captured, it's time for the leaves to change from trap to stomach. Just like our stomach, the leaves of carnivorous plants emit acidic digestive juices. These juices dissolve the animal and the plant absorbs the nutrients. When dinner is over the leaves open again, the remains of the animal are thrown out, and the plant is ready to catch another victim!

The bladderwort plant is a pretty little plant that grows in swamps. Don't be fooled by the innocent look of its small purple flowers though. Bladderworts are the fastest-known killers in the plant kingdom. They have the ability to suck small fish and insects into their leaves in 1/50 of a second! And then there's the pitcher plant – a plant so big it can catch rats. The pitcher uses its leaves to create a deep container. Animals fall into the container and can't crawl out because the leaves are slippery and sticky. Meat-eating plants prove that real life sometimes really is stranger than fiction!



- 1 Carnivorous plants
 A don't do as well as other plants in wetlands.
 B get most nutrients from the soil.
 C receive nutrients from other species.
 D are the only plants able to survive in wetlands.
- 2 The leaves of all carnivorous plants can change
 A shape. B function. C size. D position.

- 3 When an animal is trapped in a carnivorous plant
 A the leaves open immediately.
 B the leaves produce a liquid that breaks meat down.
 C the animal receives nutritious juices.
 D the animal is used as bait for the next victim.
- 4 The bladderwort plant
 A has got sticky leaves.
 B eats big animals.
 C hasn't got flowers.
 D is a very rapid killer. (4x2=8)

b) Answer the questions in your own words. Justify your answers.

- 1 Why can carnivorous plants live in habitats low in essential nutrients?
 2 What are some methods that carnivorous plants use to trap animals? (2x2=4)

Speaking

- 2 Choose the correct response.

- 1 A: Let's watch that wildlife documentary tonight.
 B: a OK. Why not?
 b What's wrong with that?
- 2 A: Why not adopt an animal at the zoo?
 B: a What a great idea!
 b I suppose you're right.
- 3 A: Perhaps we can organise a 'Save Energy Day' at school.
 B: a You're welcome.
 b That sounds great.
- 4 A: You should buy energy saving light bulbs.
 B: a I suppose you are right.
 b That's no excuse.
- 5 A: How about installing solar panels?
 B: a Good thinking.
 b Sorry – I didn't think of that.

(5x2=10)

Progress Check 2

Listening

3 Listen to a lecture about an endangered species and decide if the following statements are **True** or **False**.

- There are more than 50 Amur leopards living in the wild.
- Amur leopards are found in China, Korea and Russia.
- The Amur leopard's fur changes during the seasons.
- They usually live in groups.
- They sleep during the day and hunt at night.
- They hide their prey if they don't finish eating it.
- Amur leopards are not a protected species.
- The main threat to the Amur leopard comes from poachers.

(8x1=8)

Vocabulary

4 Fill in with: *pregnant, rare, shallow, millennia, unique, powers, scales, continuously, current, anatomy*.

- We can't swim here. The is too strong.
- The Chinese believe tiger bones have healing
- In seahorses, it is the male not the female that becomes
- This snake species is to one lake in the Philippines.
- Legends of dragons have existed for
- The water is very – it's only up to my waist.
- The skin of most fish is covered in
- Sharks replace their teeth; they are constantly generating new teeth.
- The trunk is the most interesting features of the elephant's
- The Amazon Rainforest is home to thousands of animal and plant species.

(10x2=20)

Grammar

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- What (take) with you for the hike?
- I will call you as soon as I (arrive) at the animal shelter.
- (you/finish) the project by 3 o'clock?
- Please don't phone us between 1 pm and 5 pm. We (work).
- It's a nice day today. I think I (go) to the zoo.
- The seminar (start) when Mr Harris arrives.
- Look how sunburnt you are! (you/be) sore tonight.
- Scientists think all wild seafood (disappear) in 50 years.
- Sorry, but I can't come at 6 as I (help) at the shelter.
- The traffic is terrible. We (be) late for the meeting.

(10x2=20)

6 Rewrite the sentences using an appropriate modal verb.

- It's forbidden to take pictures.
.....
- It isn't necessary to feed the cats.
.....
- It's the duty of students to pick up their rubbish.
.....
- It's the right thing to listen without interrupting.
.....
- It's prohibited to take pets into the museum.
.....

(5x2=10)

Writing

7 Read the rubric, then write your essay.

You have had a class discussion about energy waste. Your teacher has asked you to write an essay discussing ways to save energy (120-180 words). Write your essay.

(20 marks)

(Total=100)

Check your progress

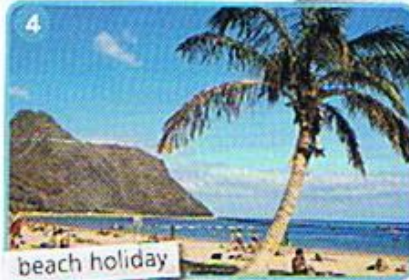
- talk about our natural world
- talk about types of animals & endangered species
- talk about environmental problems
- express prohibition
- express advice
- express obligation/duty (necessity)
- talk about future events
- make suggestions & agree/disagree
- identify stress in questions
- write an essay providing solutions to a problem

GOOD / VERY GOOD // EXCELLENT ///

Travel & Holidays

Module 3

Types of holidays



MODULE OBJECTIVES

- ▶ **Vocabulary**
 - types of holidays
 - means of transport
 - hotel facilities/services
 - holiday problems
 - prepositions
 - phrasal verbs: *come*
 - word formation: forming *-ing/-ed* adjectives
- ▶ **Reading**
 - missing sentences
 - answer questions
- ▶ **Grammar**
 - past tenses
 - *used to/would*
- ▶ **Listening**
 - a story (note taking)
 - an interview (multiple choice)
 - intonation in exclamations
- ▶ **Speaking**
 - express dissatisfaction/sympathy/surprise/disbelief
 - describe pictures
- ▶ **Writing**
 - a paragraph describing an experience
 - a description of a visit to a place
- ▶ **Language Focus**
 - phrasal verbs & prepositions
 - word formation
 - grammar in focus
- ▶ **Progress Check**

1 a) Choose the correct word.

- A • *vibrant* • *major*
• *fascinating* • *friendly*

- B • *delicious* • *freezing cold*
• *cosy* • *secluded*

Madrid is a 1) city and the locals are very 2) We visited all the 3) tourist attractions and in the evening we experienced Madrid's 4) nightlife.

- C • *peaceful*
• *deserted*
• *clear*

The place where we stayed was clean and very 9) There was a beach five minutes down the road. The sea was crystal 10) and we went swimming every morning. The beach was almost always 11) We really enjoyed having it to ourselves.

It was 5) with a temperature of -5°C. We stayed in a small 6) village high up in the mountains. Our hostel was clean and 7) and the food was 8)

b) Match the texts to the pictures.

🔊 Listen and check. Choose a text and translate it into Polish.

2 Imagine you went on either a safari or a sightseeing holiday. Use these words and adjectives to talk about the holiday.

- *quiet* ≠ *noisy/crowded* (place/streets/hotel)
- *crowded* ≠ *deserted/secluded* (beach/square)
- *scorching hot* ≠ *freezing cold*
- *beautiful* ≠ *ugly* (place) • *clean* ≠ *dirty* (place)
- *exciting* ≠ *boring* (nightlife/city)
- *clean* ≠ *polluted* (water)
- *safe* ≠ *dangerous* (area)
- *modern* ≠ *historic* (building/city)
- *cheap* ≠ *expensive* (shop/hotel/restaurant)
- *friendly* ≠ *unfriendly* (locals)

adventurous
tiring
thrilling
exciting
exhausting
amazing

3a

Reading

1 Look at the picture and listen to the sounds. How do you think you would feel if you were in this place?

2 Check these words/phrases in the Word List. Use five of them to complete the gaps.

- *thunder* • *plunge into*
- *natural wonders* • *rainbows*
- *unique experience*
- *tourist attraction* • *named*

1 Victoria Falls is in Africa. It's one of the seven of the modern world.

2 Livingstone the waterfall after his wife.

3 Every minute 200 million litres of water a gorge.

4 You can hear the water make a noise like even when you are 50 km from the waterfall.

5 A visit to the waterfall is a

3 a) Which of the sentences in Ex. 2 are true about Victoria Falls?

b) Listen and read to check your answers. Then correct them. What is the author's intention?

Did you Know?

The forest around Victoria Falls is the only place on Earth where it rains 24 hours a day. This is due to the spray from the Falls.

The Thundering Smoke

A Before the exploration of Africa in the 19th century, myths and legends circulated around Europe about the continent. Europeans knew very little about this vast mass of land as few travellers had ever dared venture into its mysterious interior. One enthusiastic Scottish explorer by the name of Dr David Livingstone was passionate about Africa and extremely eager to discover its secrets. **1**

B Dr Livingstone was sent to South Africa in 1840 as a **medical missionary**. He would end up spending a large part of his life there. Between 1842 and 1846, he explored south and central Africa and became the first European to travel across the **entire** country West to East. On 16th November 1855, Dr Livingstone **stumbled upon** a huge waterfall. **2** "No one can imagine the beauty of the view from anything witnessed in England. It had never been seen before by European eyes; but scenes so lovely must have been gazed upon by angels in flight," he later wrote. **3** But Livingstone named it Victoria Falls after his queen.

C Victoria Falls is located in the national park of the same name in southern Africa on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. While it is neither the highest nor the widest waterfall in the world, it is the largest. The falls itself is 1,708 m wide and 108 m in height. **4** Every minute, 500 million litres of water plunge 100 m into a narrow gorge. The spray from the falls rises to a height of 400 m and can be seen up to 50 km away.

D The waterfall is undoubtedly one of the most magnificent natural spectacles in the world. **5** Victoria Falls is considered one of the seven natural wonders of the world and the entire national park is a UNESCO World Heritage Site. **6** The noise from the water falling sounds like thunder and the air above it seems as if it is filled with clouds of smoke. Spectacular rainbows form in the skies above it in all seasons and the natural beauty of the surrounding area adds even more to its **magnificence**. **7** All stand before the falls in awe, just as Dr Livingstone did over 150 years ago.

STUDY SKILLS

Missing sentences

Read the text to get to know what it is about. Read the missing sentences and identify the main point in each. Read the text again and pay attention to the words before and after each gap. Look for clues e.g. reference words (*he, it, etc*) or linking words. Check that your choice fits grammatically. Read the whole text to check it makes sense.



Check these words

- exploration • circulate • dare
- venture • stumble upon • witness
- gaze • name after • plunge
- gorge • undoubtedly • unique
- spectacular • magnificence

4 Read the text and fill in the gaps 1-7 with a correct sentence A-H. One sentence is extra.

- A Consequently, it has become a very popular tourist attraction.
- B Little did he know what marvels he would find.
- C Around 300,000 people visit the falls every year.
- D He described it as the most wonderful sight he had seen in Africa.
- E The discovery would be unlike any he had made before.
- F A visit to Victoria Falls is a truly unique experience.
- G The waterfall was known to the local people as 'the smoke that thunders'.
- H This makes it the biggest single sheet of falling water on the planet.

5 In your own words, and based on the text, answer the questions. Do not copy from the text.

- 1 Why did Dr Livingstone go to Africa?
- 2 What was Dr Livingstone's reaction when he first saw the waterfall?
- 3 Why did Dr Livingstone call the waterfall Victoria Falls?
- 4 Why did the locals call it 'the smoke that thunders'?
- 5 Where would you expect to find this kind of text?

6 Explain the words in bold. Check in the Word List.

7 Write a synonym (=), an opposite (≠), a definition or a sentence for the following words to show that you understand their meaning in the text. Use your own words. Check in your dictionaries.

- 1 vast (ℓ. 3); 2 extremely (ℓ. 6); 3 lovely (ℓ. 16);
4 widest (ℓ. 21); 5 adds (ℓ. 34); 6 unique (sentence F)

- 1 *vast = extremely large ≠ small*
The Sahara is a vast desert in Africa that covers an area almost as large as the United States.

STUDY SKILLS

False friends

False friends are words or phrases in two languages that look or sound similar but they differ in meaning. e.g. *aktualny* resembles *actual* but it means *current*.

8 Are there any false friends in the text?



Use the sentences in Ex. 2 to write or give the class a short summary of the text either in English or in Polish.



Imagine you are Dr Livingstone and you are seeing the Falls for the first time. In three minutes write a few sentences describing your experience and feelings. Tell the class.

3b

Vocabulary

Vocabulary from the text

- 1 Replace the underlined words/phrases with: *wonders, spread, had strong feelings, unbelievable, seen, inspired, centre.*

- Dr Livingstone was passionate about Africa.
- In Europe, strange stories circulated about the continent.
- In the 1700s, much of the interior of Africa was unfamiliar to Europeans.
- His visit to the waterfall encouraged him to write a novel.
- It was unlike anything they had ever witnessed.
- The men told fantastic stories about what they had seen in the jungle.
- They can't wait to experience the marvels of Africa.

- 2 Use the verbs in their correct form to complete the gaps.

• rise • raise • arise

- He his voice so that they could hear him.
- Black smoke, up making it impossible to see what was going on.
- A lot of problems have since he left.

• discover • invent • find out

- He was upset when he she had lied to him.
- Amerigo Vespucci America.
- A.G.Bell the telephone.

• glimpse • watch • notice
• look

- He at the child and smiled.
- I only the man's face briefly.
- Let's the news on TV.
- Suddenly, he that his watch had stopped.

Topic vocabulary
Transport

- 3 Read the sentences. What means of transport is each person referring to? What is your favourite means of transport for travelling *short distances*? *long distances*? Why?

- It takes off at 2:30 and we need to go to Gate 39.
- Excuse me, which platform is it for the Bristol service?
- You must always wear your helmet, even for a short ride.
- There's a restaurant and a juice bar on the lower deck.
- I can give you both a lift if you like; there's plenty of room.

- 4 Listen to the announcements. Which means of transport does each match? Which words helped you decide?

Announcement 1

Announcement 2

Announcement 3

Announcement 4

- 5 a) Use these words to complete the spidergrams.

• seatbelt • cabin • flight • carriage • luggage • chain
• rear view mirror • landing • road map • buffet car
• deck • check-in desk • brakes • port • station
• handlebars • tyre • cruise • takeoff • boarding pass
• compartment • boot • platform



- b) Complete the sentences with words from Ex. 5a.

- Flying over the Alps was breathtaking and our landed on time.
- We had a on E deck, so we could see out over the sea.
- I remember my first bike had a bell on the
- You can take 23 kg of on the flight without extra charge.
- Drivers should have the car's serviced regularly for safety reasons.
- We hadn't booked in advance, but we found seats in the last on the train.

- c) Make sentences of your own using the words from Ex. 5a that you didn't use in Ex. 5b.

- 6** Fill in: *by, on, along, towards* or *off*.
- I really enjoy travelling plane.
 - He walked the platform, looking for his carriage.
 - The stewardess walked the rear of the plane.
 - Jenny got her bike and went into the library.
 - When they got the ship, they went to their cabin.

Facilities/Services

- 7** a) Match the symbols (a-n) to what they stand for (1-14).

a		b		1	swimming pool
				2	gym
				3	telephone in room
				4	babysitting service
c		d		5	TV room
		e		6	room service
				7	facilities for the disabled
f		g		8	air-conditioning
		h		9	restaurant
				10	hairdryer in room
i		j		11	conference facilities
		k		12	children over the age indicated welcome
				13	pets welcome
l		m		14	dry-cleaning service
		n			

- b) Which facilities/services are important to you when you go on holiday?
I always choose hotels where pets are allowed.

Word formation (forming -ing/-ed adjectives)

- 8** Read the theory. Then complete the sentences with the correct adjective.

We use **-ing** adjectives to describe what something is like. *It was an **exciting** holiday.*
 We use **-ed** adjectives to describe feelings. *We were **excited**.*

- The journey was extremely **tiring/tired**.
- We were **annoying/annoyed** by the receptionist's bad manners.
- She was **shocking/shocked** to find out her flight had departed.
- The service in the restaurant was **appalling/appalled**.
- She didn't know which gate to go to. She was **confusing/confused**.

- 9** Choose the correct word. Check in the Word List. What style is the text written in? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

The Black Swan is 1) *located/positioned* only 2.5 kilometres from the city centre and is perfect for a city 2) *break/stop*. Because of the hotel's beautiful 3) *rural/urban* surroundings, you will feel as if you are in the countryside. The hotel's 4) *facilities/equipment* include a five-star restaurant, a gym and an indoor swimming pool. Internet connection is provided 5) *free/open* to all guests and there is also ample parking 6) *space/area* free of charge. All rooms are furnished to the highest standards and we offer 7) *circle/round-the-clock* room service. Laundry, ironing and dry-cleaning services are also available on request. We pride ourselves on our service which is second to 8) *none/all*. All our 9) *staff/servants* are friendly and helpful and wish to make your 10) *stay/stop* as comfortable as possible.

Book online at www.blackswan-hotel.co.uk
 or call 01539 22222

Phrasal verbs: COME into across

- 10** Complete the sentences with the appropriate particle(s). up with **come** round down with

- While I was on holiday I came an old schoolfriend. (**meet by chance**)
- He didn't enjoy his weekend break because he came measles. (**become ill**)
- He came a huge fortune which included two hotels when his uncle passed away. (**inherit**)
- She came the idea for the story while she was visiting Victoria Falls. (**think of**)
- It took him some time to come after he slipped and fell down the stairs. (**recover consciousness**)

3c

Grammar in use

Past simple, Past continuous, Past perfect and Past Perfect continuous

Hi Jess,

Guess what! I'm in the Bahamas. My boss told me I could take a holiday as I **1) had been working** so hard and he was pleased with my results. I **2) checked** online and decided to book a ten-day holiday at this 5-star hotel.

When I arrived at the hotel, I walked up to the check-in desk and informed the receptionist that I **3) had made** a reservation under the name of 'Dumas'. Imagine my surprise when I heard her tell the porter to take my bags up to the €5,000-a-night penthouse suite!

When I got to my room, I **4) tipped** the porter, quickly **unpacked** my bags and **went** out onto the balcony to see the view. It was a glorious day. The sun **5) was shining** and the sea sparkled below me. As I **6) was admiring** the view, the phone rang. It was the hotel receptionist. Nervously, she told me there had been a mix-up, and that I had to pack my bags and leave the room at once!

You won't believe what had happened. Apparently, I wasn't the only Dumas who had booked for that day. My namesake is a famous writer and the receptionist had mistaken me for him!

Anyway, my new room is nice and I'm having a great time. I'll tell you all about it when I get back.

See you soon.

Alex

▶ see pp. 154 (GR5) - 155 (GR6)

- 1** a) Identify the tenses in bold (1-6) then match them to their uses (A-F). Check in the Grammar Reference.

- A** action which happened at a certain time in the past (there is direct/indirect reference to the time)
- B** actions which happened one after the other in the past
- C** action which had been in progress before another action in the past
- D** action which gives background information
- E** action which was in progress in the past and another action interrupted it
- F** action which happened before another action in the past

b) Identify the rest of the past forms in the text. How is each used?

c) Are there similar structures in Polish? How do you use them?

- 2** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct past tense to complete the exchanges. Justify your answers.

- 1 A: How (be) your holiday in Spain?
B: Great, thanks. I (have) a fantastic time.
- 2 A: What (you/do) when the phone (ring)?
B: I (wash) my hair and I (not/hear) it.
- 3 A: Tony (surf) the Net when he (find) a great deal on a trip to Paris.
B: I know, but by the time he (tell) me about it, I (already/book) my holiday to Berlin.
- 4 A: How (you/miss) your flight?
B: We (shop) in the duty-free shop and we (not/hear) the announcement.
- 5 A: (you/stay) in a hotel during your holiday?
B: No. We (rent) an apartment for two weeks.
- 6 A: Jane (look) exhausted when I saw her.
B: That's because she (work) long hours for the last three weeks.

- 3** Use these time adverbs to make sentences about yourself: *yesterday, two weeks ago, while, last year, before, all day, yesterday, last summer, already, yet, for hours yesterday, for ten years, by the time.*

Yesterday, I got my driver's licence!

4 Make sentences as in the example.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 ride bike/
an hour | a flight/depart |
| 2 shop/for
souvenirs | b start/rain |
| 3 wait/for hours | c someone/
steal/wallet |
| 4 lie/by the pool | d get/flat tyre |
| 5 wait/the airport | e lose/
passport |

I had been riding my bike for an hour when I got a flat tyre.

Past simple, Present perfect

- I haven't travelled abroad since 2008.
- I went to Spain last May.

see p. 154 (GR5)

5 Match the sentences (1-2) to the uses (A-B).

- A** action which finished in the past
B action which started in the past and continues up to the present

6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- She (visit) Rome twice.
- She (get) into the taxi and (head) for the station.
- They (move) to Madrid in 2010.
- (you/ever/try) scuba diving?
- We (not/book) our flight yet.
- What time (they/arrive) last night?

Used to/Would

As a child, I used to go/would go/went to the seaside every year. What did you use to do? (past habit)

I used to have/had long hair, but now I have short hair. (NOT: I would have.) (past state)

see p. 155 (GR6)

7 Choose the incorrect word/phrase.

- As a child, my mum would go/used to go/was going to France on holiday.
- My grandad had/used to have/would have jet black hair when he was young.
- We went/were going/used to go fishing every morning on holiday.
- When she was younger, she would stay/was staying/stayed with her cousins every summer.
- He would have/used to have/had a part-time job as a waiter during summer while he was studying in England.
- Where did you use to live/would you live/did you live as a child?

8 What did/didn't you use to do on holiday when you were ten? Write six sentences. Tell your partner.

I used to get up late. I didn't use to travel abroad.

Key word transformations

9 For each question, complete the second sentence using the word in bold so that it means the same as the first. Use two to five words. Do not change the word in bold.

- As a child, I went swimming every summer. **USED**
As a child, I every summer.
- Peter telephoned during lunch. **HAVING**
We Peter telephoned.
- After working as a receptionist for twelve years, Sam opened his own B & B. **BEEN**
Before Sam opened his own B & B a receptionist for twelve years.
- It rained every day during our holiday. **STOP**
It our holiday.
- The last time we went abroad was two years ago. **FOR**
We two years.

10 a) Read the text below.

It had been bright and sunny all morning and we were having fun on our boat trip around the island. Then, all of a sudden, the weather changed, and things took a turn for the worse.

b) Listen to the sounds. Use the key words to continue the story.

- started blowing
- huge waves
- hit boat
- got scared
- radioed for help
- coastguard came to our rescue
- felt relieved

3d

Listening skills

Holiday problems

- 1 a) You will listen to a story. Before you listen check these words/phrases in the Word List. Which ones can you see in the pictures?



- *passport is out of date* • *car breaks down*
- *dirty beach/sea* • *get sunburnt*
- *miss flight* • *get food poisoning*
- *lose luggage* • *have credit card stolen*
- *have terrible weather* • *rude hotel staff*
- *cramped hotel room*
- *not speak the language*

- b) Listen to the story. Which of the problems in Ex. 1a does the narrator mention?

- 2 Listen again and complete the gaps (1-10). Use two to three words.

Jenny went to India on the recommendation of

1 _____.

Before she left, she had 2 _____ the money she needed.

After getting off the plane she was shocked to find out her luggage 3 _____.

At first she wanted to get 4 _____ to the hotel.

Finally she went to her hotel 5 _____.

It took them 6 _____ to reach the hotel.

The hotel wasn't as it was described in

7 _____.

Her room was 8 _____ and _____ but it had a great view.

During her holiday she visited the 9 _____.

Although she liked the local food, she got

10 _____.

- 3 Have you ever had a problem while on holiday? Where were you? Who were you with? What exactly happened? Tell the class.

Last summer we decided to spend our holidays in a friend's country cottage. As we were driving to the village we got a flat tyre. It took us two hours to fix it.

- 4 a) You will hear an interview about travel experiences. Before you listen, check these words in the *Word List*.

- *resort* • *disastrous* • *thrill-seeker*
- *check-in* • *exhilarating*

- b) Listen to the interview and for questions 1-6 choose the correct answer A, B or C.

- 1 The radio presenter wants listeners to talk about
 - A a bad experience in a restaurant.
 - B the attractions of Rome.
 - C a disastrous holiday experience.
- 2 Mike and his family decided to spend their holiday
 - A sky diving in Australia.
 - B skiing in Austria.
 - C at a resort in the Caribbean.
- 3 They missed their plane because
 - A they were stopped by the police.
 - B their reservation was incorrect.
 - C they had car trouble.
- 4 Katie went to Vietnam because
 - A she could afford it.
 - B she had never been to another country before.
 - C she had always wanted to go there.
- 5 Katie's holiday was ruined because
 - A her hotel room was cramped.
 - B the beach was filthy.
 - C she got badly sunburnt.
- 6 The competition ends
 - A in the afternoon.
 - B at midnight.
 - C tomorrow afternoon.

Pronunciation (stress in exclamations) see p. 155 (GR6)

- 5 a) Read the table. Complete the sentences.

What a/an (+ adjective) + singular noun
What (+ adjective) + plural/uncountable noun
How + adverb/adjective

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 bad weather!
2 terrible!
3 disappointing! | 4 awful experience!
5 exhilarating it must have been! |
|---|--|

- b) Listen to the sentences. Which syllable is stressed in each sentence?

- c) Listen again and repeat.

3f

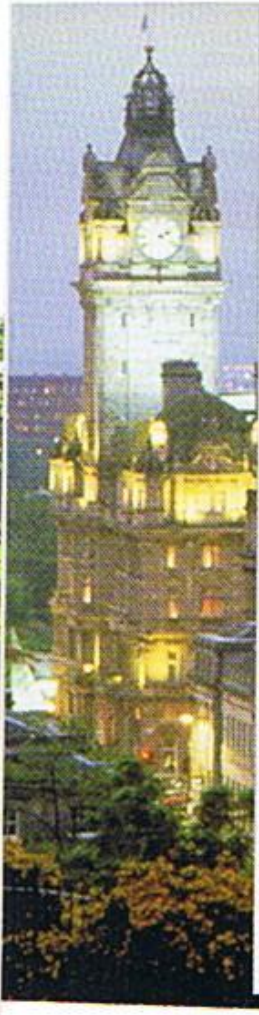
Writing A description of a visit to a place

▶ Writing Bank 3 p. 144 (WB3)

Model analysis

1 Read the rubric, then the model.

Your teacher has asked you to write a description about a place you visited on holiday last year. Describe the place and say what you saw and did there (120-180 words).



A Perfect City Break

1 Last October my best friend and I booked a short break in the famous city of Edinburgh on Scotland's east coast. We stayed at a small hotel near the city centre. When we arrived, a cold wind was blowing and there was a thick mist, but that just made the atmosphere more exciting and mysterious!

2 Edinburgh is an amazing city. Apart from the modern areas, it is full of beautiful historic buildings and narrow cobbled streets which add to its magic.

3 We didn't have time to see and do everything. We visited Edinburgh Castle and saw the Scottish Crown Jewels. Then, we explored Mary King's Close with its creepy hidden underground streets and houses. The city's poor lived there in the 17th century. There were also several traditional restaurants where they served the Scottish speciality, haggis. It looked weird but was surprisingly tasty.

4 We enjoyed every minute of our visit. Edinburgh is so fascinating that I definitely plan to go back one day.

Which paragraph mentions:

- A the writer's comments about the place?
 B what the writer saw and did there?
 C the name of the place and the reason for going there?
 D what the place was like?

STUDY SKILLS

Making a description interesting

Using a variety of adjectives (*huge, amazing, etc*) and adverbs (*horribly, astonishingly, etc*) makes a description more interesting.

2 Replace the adjectives in bold in the model using adjectives from the list.

- attractive • well-known • thrilling • chilly
- scary • interesting • delicious • strange

3 Replace the adjectives in bold with other appropriate ones from the list.

- delicious • warm • picturesque • cosy
- enjoyable • freezing cold • friendly

A

We stayed in a **1) nice** chalet in the **2) nice** mountains in Bulgaria. The people were **3) good** and **4) nice**. The weather was **5) bad**, but we didn't mind. The home-cooked food was **6) good** and we had a(n) **7) nice** time skiing every day. I can't wait to go back again next year.

- exciting • fantastic • 5-star • interesting
- traditional • beautiful

B

We had a **1) nice** time in Barcelona. It's a **2) nice** place. We stayed in a **3) nice** hotel in the heart of the city and we saw lots of **4) nice** tourist attractions. In the evenings we tasted local dishes at **5) nice** restaurants and enjoyed some of the **6) good** nightlife.

- relaxing • beautiful • stunning • narrow
- traditional • peaceful

C

Clovelly is a **1) nice** seaside village with **2) nice** views of the Devon coast. It is **3) nice** and tranquil and it is famous for its donkeys that carry goods up and down the **4) small** streets. We stayed in a **5) nice** cottage and we went for walks along the beach every day. We got to know the locals and had a very **6) nice** holiday.

4 Fill in the appropriate adverbs.

- increasingly • gracefully • comfortably
- luxuriously • lazily • aimlessly

- We sunbathed on the beach every day.
- I sat in a café and enjoyed the amazing view across the city.
- The city is becoming popular with young people.
- She danced to the music with the other festival-goers.
- The palace was decorated.
- I wandered through the cobbled streets looking in the shop windows.

Speaking skills 3e

Express dissatisfaction/sympathy/surprise/disbelief

- 1** a) Listen and say.
- A Did you have a good time on holiday?
 - B I'm very sorry to hear that.
 - C That's terrible!
 - D We certainly did.
 - E What went wrong?
 - F I hope your next holiday isn't such a bad experience.
 - G I wasn't happy with the food.
- b) Which of the sentences above express: *surprise? disbelief? dissatisfaction? sympathy?*

- 2** a) Complete the dialogue with sentences from Ex. 1.
 Listen and check.

Ann:

Ben: Not really.

Ann: Why not?

Ben: Well, to start with, our car broke down and we had to wait for several hours before anyone came to help. Then we got to the hotel and found out that our room was far too cramped.

Ann: Did you make a complaint to the hotel management?

Ben: But the hotel was already fully booked. Anyway, we unpacked our bags and went down to the beach. But it was so dirty and smelly that we had to spend the entire holiday round the hotel pool!

Ann:

Ben: It is. Then, to make matters worse, It was so bad, in fact, that we ended up spending a lot of money eating out every night, even though our meals were included in the price of the holiday!

Ann: No way! Did you make a complaint to the travel agency?

Ben: As soon as we got back! They offered to compensate us, but still, our holiday had already been ruined.

Ann:

b) Take roles and read the dialogue aloud.

- 3** Work in pairs. Think of a holiday of yours where everything went wrong. Use phrases from the language in the box to act out a dialogue similar to the one in Ex. 2.

Asking for information/detail	Responding with sympathy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Did you have a good time on holiday? • What went wrong? • Why not? • Did you make a complaint? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I'm very sorry to hear that. • I hope your next holiday isn't such a bad experience. • You have my sympathy.
Expressing surprise/disbelief	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • That's too bad! • That's terrible! • No way! 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You must be joking! • I can't believe it!
Expressing dissatisfaction	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The hotel was already fully booked. • The ... was awful. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I didn't like ... • I wasn't happy/satisfied with ... • It just wasn't what I had pictured.

Describing pictures

STUDY SKILLS

Describing pictures

Describe the people and activities as fully as possible. Imagine you are describing the picture to a person who can't see it, so be as detailed as possible.

- 4** Look at the picture and complete the description.

I can see **1**) children in the picture. There is a young girl and a young **2**) They are at the **3**) I can see the sea in the background. I think it's noon because the **4**) is very bright. It's a beautiful day and it is probably quite hot. The children are smiling. It's hard to see what they are wearing, but I guess they are wearing their swimsuits or T-shirts and shorts. The girl is wearing a straw **5**) with a large yellow **6**) on it. The boy is wearing a red baseball **7**) and is holding a **8**) Both children are wearing colourful swimming goggles. I'm sure they are having a great time.



- 5** Describe the picture to your partner. Talk about: *people, place, time of day, weather, activities, clothes, feelings.*



Making comments

- 5 Fill in: *truly, definitely, certainly, without doubt, just.*
- 1 It is the best place for a relaxing holiday. We'll be going back next year.
 - 2 I had an amazing adventure. It was an experience I will never forget.
 - 3 I had a marvellous trip. Everything was perfect.
 - 4 This trip was a fabulous experience. I enjoyed experiencing the history of the place.
 - 5, this was the most thrilling holiday I've ever had.

Using modifiers (adverbs of degree)

- 6 Read the examples.

The beach was **a bit** crowded.
 It was **rather** expensive.
 The hotel was quiet, peaceful and **fairly** close to the city centre.
 We had a **really** good time.

+	a little, slightly, a bit
++	rather, pretty, quite, fairly
+++	very, really, extremely

- 7 Choose the correct word.

- 1 There were **rather/quite** a number of cosy cafés and quaint tearooms.
- 2 The hotel was **extremely/rather** expensive, but not beyond our budget.
- 3 The weather was **slightly/pretty** worse than we expected, but it didn't spoil our trip.
- 4 The boat trip was a **little/really** disappointing, but enjoyable nonetheless.
- 5 The museum was **very/fairly** interesting. In fact it was one of the best I've been to.
- 6 The town centre was a **bit/really** busy, but not crowded.

STUDY SKILLS

Brainstorming

Before you start writing, think of the topics you are going to write about e.g. activities, sights, etc. Write as many ideas as you can under each topic. Then decide which ones to use in your piece of writing.

Your turn

- 8 Your teacher has asked you to write a description of a place you visited on holiday last year. List words/phrases related to the topic under the headings in your notebook.



- 9 Use your notes in Ex. 8 to write your description. Follow the plan (120-180 words).

Useful Language

- is a large town/a small seaside village/on the north/south (coast) of ...
- ... perfect holiday destination
- has a lot of tourist attractions
- visited beautiful/historic palaces
- had lunch/dinner at cosy/trendy restaurants/café
- stayed at a 5-star luxurious hotel
- went shopping at modern shopping centres
- walked down narrow/cobbled/quiet streets
- had exciting nightlife
- danced in clubs popular with the locals
- has something for everyone.
- is the best place for a short break.
- It was the best holiday ever.

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *name of place/location/reason you went there/who with/where you stayed*

Main Body

(Para 2) *what the place is like*
 (Para 3) *what you saw and did there*

Conclusion

(Para 4) *your comments*



Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for the following:

- Have you used a variety of adjectives/adverbs to describe the various features of the place?
- Have you used correct spelling, grammar and punctuation?
- Does each paragraph present a different topic?
- Have you included your comments about the place?

- 1 For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C, D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Tourism and the Cairngorm Mountain Railway

Stretching from the east to the west of central Northern Scotland 0) A the rare and fragile environment of the Cairngorm National Park. After driving about eight miles on the road south of Aviemore, you come 1) the Cairngorm Mountain Railway, which takes visitors on a scenic ride up the mountain until they 2) the Cairngorm plateau.

Since its construction in 2001, the Mountain Railway has 3) many visitors and, despite the 4) effects this has had on the region's economy, 5) tourism has also done a great deal of 6) to the fragile environment of the national park.

The region's council has 7) the issue of whether the benefits of the railway outweigh the disadvantages, and environmentalists have been looking at 8) in which tourism can be continued while 9) damage to the region at the same time.

Finally, a series of talks and negotiations between environmental organisations and local authorities has 10) to a compromise according to which visitors will still be 11) to use the railway, but with some restrictions. For now at least, it seems that the 12) of whether the railway is good or bad for the area has been resolved.

- 0 A lies B occupies C reaches D spreads
 1 A on B across C against D along
 2 A get B arrive C reach D come
 3 A drawn B attracted C dragged D grabbed
 4 A real B true C decisive D positive
 5 A deep B strong C mass D thick
 6 A hurt B injury C harm D trouble
 7 A put B caused C raised D brought
 8 A ways B manners C directions D routes
 9 A preventing B helping C influencing D defending
 10 A led B driven C directed D guided
 11 A let B allowed C granted D offered
 12 A demand B request C question D challenge

- 2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

0 Bill said it was my fault that we were lost. **BLAMED**

Bill *blamed me for the* fact that we were lost.

1 "What is the height of the mountain?" asked the tourist. **HOW**

The tourist asked was.

2 The hotel is sending a car to meet us at the airport. **PICK**

The hotel is sending a car to from the airport.

3 Our holiday is postponed till later this year. **PUT**

Our holiday has till later this year.

4 Dan lost his way in the mountains because he didn't have a map. **LOST**

If Dan had had a map, he his way in the mountains.

5 I don't feel like going out tonight. **PREFER**

I'd tonight.

6 "Would it be possible to see a copy of the hotel brochure?" asked Leon. **LOOK**

Leon asked at the hotel brochure.

7 Tom couldn't go skiing because he didn't have the right equipment. **ABLE**

If Tom had had the right equipment, he go skiing.

8 We found it difficult to locate the ski lodge. **EASY**

It to locate the ski lodge.

- 3 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in capitals.

1 We were taken up the mountain by a climber. **PROFESSION**

2 My brother has visited some really places. **ORDINARY**

3 The thing I remember most about Spain is the amazing **SCENE**

4 Weekend breaks have grown in over the last decade. **POPULAR**

5 We learned some facts at the museum. **FASCINATE**

3

Language
Knowledge

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- 1 "Your sweater has shrunk."
"It didn't occur to me to check the label and I washed it in hot water."
A even C never
B still D somewhat
- 2 "Why are you all excited?"
"Jane's coming home from college than we expected!"
A even early C very earlier
B too early D much earlier
- 3 After training for 3 years, she got a job a certified nurse.
A of B like C as D for
- 4 "I don't see any reason why we shouldn't go by plane."
"Well, my concern is the cost."
A most great C great
B greatest D greater
- 5 He boasted the tournament five years in a row.
A to have won C from his winning
B for having won D about having won
- 6 Jonathan keeps fit working out three times a week.
A by B with C from D at
- 7 The weather forecaster reported that temperatures in the area had reached 42°C and by 5°.
A expected to rise
B expected that it will rise
C were expected that it rose
D were expected to rise
- 8 "I don't think Greg is used to working shifts."
"Actually,"
A neither am I C so am I
B me, too D I don't either
- 9 There was much thick smoke that they couldn't see across the hallway.
A so B such C too D very
- 10 "Do you remember the heating before you left the office?"
"Yes, first I switched off the heating and then the lights."
A turning off C turn off
B to turn off D to turning off

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Please let us know if you are unable to the meeting.
A intend B present C attend D visit
- 2 The mayor has made for people with disabilities.
A provision C adjustment
B expansion D arrangement
- 3 The police said that the driver of the mini bus was at
A error B guilt C mistake D fault
- 4 It's difficult to predict the weather
A exactly C accurately
B evenly D perfectly
- 5 The windows of our house are all with security locks.
A furnished C attached
B fitted D decorated
- 6 Physics, Chemistry and Maths are related subjects.
A widely B carefully C heavily D closely
- 7 I bought this leather coat at a of the original price.
A fraction B sample C part D portion
- 8 Nobody can that Mozart was one of the best composers of his time.
A defend B assume C dispute D examine
- 9 Members of our club share a interest in art.
A joined C cooperative
B combined D common
- 10 The kind of iPhone you buy is dependent on the money you have to spend.
A quite B very C entirely D alone
- 11 Don't the problem; it's not that serious and it should be easy to solve.
A extend C enlarge
B overestimate D exaggerate
- 12 Joshua was from the quiz show after he got five answers wrong.
A eliminated C deported
B expelled D evicted
- 13 My parents don't of me staying out after midnight.
A approve C agree
B prove D consent

1 Use the words in their correct form to complete the gaps.

• dare • risk • challenge • venture

- You shouldn't going on the train without buying a ticket first.
- The explorer into unknown areas of the jungle during the expedition.
- No one had ever to ask the boss for a pay rise before.
- Paul me to a game of chess yesterday afternoon.

• explore • examine • investigate

- Police are the cause of the car accident last night.
- They my passport carefully before allowing me into the country.
- The tourist spent the whole afternoon the centre city.

• witness • observe • gaze • stare

- When I told him the news, he just at me without saying anything.
- The karate teacher told his students to him doing the move.
- I have never anything like Brian's card trick before.
- Lisa in wonder at the ballerina dancing gracefully on the stage.

• feature • characteristic • sights • sites

- One of Russia's most amazing natural is Baikal Lake.
- Karen visited many archaeological during her holiday in Crete.
- They hired a guide to show them around the of Prague.
- Thatched cottages are a of the landscape of Western Ireland.

• strike • hit • beat • knock

- Sales of the toy record numbers during the Christmas period.
- During the sales, shops often down their prices by 50 per cent.
- Arsenal Manchester United by two goals to one and won the cup.
- Paul usually wakes up when the church clock near his house seven.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

2 Choose the correct item.

- They've decided to travel **on/by** train.
- We came **down/across** this beautiful vase while on holiday in Italy.
- Let's get a cab. It'll take too long to get there **on/with** foot.
- He hasn't come **up/into** with an idea yet.
- The children walked **along/over** the beach, looking for pretty shells.

Word formation

3 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in bold.

Our holiday was a complete disaster from start to finish! First, we missed our flight, and were **1** (**able**) to get on another until the following evening. Second, the hotel we'd booked turned out to be in a really **2** (**convenient**) location. Not only that, the rooms were old and **3** (**dirt**) and the beds were really **4** (**comfortable**). Last, but not least, the day tours we went on were **5** (**organised**) and every single beach we went to was **6** (**crowd**). I hope we never have a holiday like that again.



Grammar in Focus

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Then complete the gaps with an appropriate word.

James and Lily **1** (**wait**) for their flight to take off for three hours when they heard an announcement that said there **2** be further delays. At that point, they both wished that they **3** (**choose**) to travel by train. But they thought that flying to Edinburgh would save them time. **4** wrong they turned out to be! Another two hours passed and there was still **5** sign of their flight taking off any time soon. What made things **6** was that no one would tell them the reason **7** there was such a long delay. Finally, the couple gave **8** They decided **9** (**return**) home, putting **10** their city break for the following weekend. Of course, this time catching a plane would be **11** of the question!

3

Progress
Check

Reading

1 Read the text and match the headings A-H to the paragraphs 1-7. One heading is extra.

1

If you hate airports, you've probably never been to Changi Airport in Singapore. Changi is the airport most often voted best in the world, and it's not hard to understand why.

2

Changi Airport has two free cinemas, free computer games, free music video and CD listening stations, and a free karaoke-style music studio. There's a roof-top swimming pool for people who fancy a swim, a two-storey indoor tropical butterfly garden to relax in, and a sports area to watch the latest sports news. There are also 500 free Internet stations; free foot- and leg-massage machines; and for transit passengers who have more than five hours to spare before their next connecting flight, there are even free bus tours of Singapore city!

3

But that's not all. Changi Airport also has a fitness centre and spas where you can get massages and beauty treatments, including 'fish pedicures' where small fish eat the dead skin off your feet! Add to this, 290 tax-free shops, 110 food outlets and a four-storey-high indoor slide for kids and you'll see why Changi Airport is a popular destination even for Singaporeans too. Indeed, many go to Changi Airport at weekends just to shop, dine and enjoy the facilities!

4

Providing travellers with the best possible travel experience has definitely paid off for the airport. Since opening in 1981, Changi has won over 370 international 'best of' awards.

5

Many travellers now deliberately choose Singapore as their transit point just because of Changi. Others deliberately arrange their flights so they will have as long a stopover there as possible.

6

In addition to its amazing range of amenities, the level of service offered at Changi is second-to-none. At Changi Airport



there are freshly-cut orchids in the bathrooms. There are even touch screens beside the bathroom sinks so travellers can send text messages to supervisors when toilet paper runs out!

7

Changi has changed the way travel is done and has set the benchmark for service excellence. It is unique because it offers regular travellers the kinds of perks and first-class luxury usually given only to first-class travellers. Little wonder then that Changi is one of only a handful of airports in the world where passengers are actually happy if their flight is delayed. After all, at what other airport can you go for an open-air swim and get your feet cleaned by fish?

- A Maintaining a high standard
- B Better outside than in
- C A true pioneer
- D An airport to change your opinion
- E Travel plans are carefully made
- F Hugely appealing to locals
- G Traveller satisfaction is paramount
- H No need to stay inside

Listening

2 You will hear a conversation between a travel agent and a customer.

(7x3=21)

Listen to the conversation and choose the correct answer A, B or C. Is the dialogue formal or informal? Check on p. 165.

- 1 Alex still isn't certain about
 - A how long he can go away for.
 - B when he can go away.
 - C where he wants to go.
- 2 With regards to accommodation, Alex says he
 - A dislikes hotels.
 - B has already booked a studio apartment.
 - C doesn't want to stay in a bed and breakfast.
- 3 When asked about his budget, Alex says he
 - A doesn't have one.
 - B can spend a maximum of €1500.
 - C has around €1500.
- 4 What does Alex want to do on holiday?
 - A relax on the beach
 - B go on a 2-day tour
 - C see some historical sites
- 5 Alex has plans to travel
 - A alone.
 - B with his parents.
 - C with a friend.

(5x2=10)

Progress Check 3

Speaking

3 Choose the correct response.

- A: The sightseeing tour wasn't what I had in mind.
B: a What was the problem?
b Did you enjoy your holiday?
- A: The service was terrible.
B: a Why not? b Did you complain?
- A: We changed hotels, but our holiday was still ruined.
B: a I hope you'll be luckier next time.
b That wasn't what I had in mind.
- A: The hotel staff were rude and unfriendly.
B: a I can't believe it. b Not really.
- A: The weather was really awful.
B: a What did you mean? b I'm sorry to hear that.

(5x2=10)

Vocabulary

4 Fill in with: *eager, rush, deserted, located, undoubtedly, facilities, attractions, boarding, circulated, passionate.*

- There was no one on the beach. It was
- The city is in the Valley of Anahuac, Mexico.
- He has always been about saving the tiger.
- Big Ben is the most visited place in London.
- We were to visit Victoria Falls.
- I avoid the town centre during hour.
- It's surprising how fast they the story.
- The Louvre is one of Paris's most famous tourist
- Flight 206 is now at Gate 20.
- The hotel offers a wide range of

(10x1=10)

Grammar

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct past tense.

- Yesterday, we (eat) at a lovely little restaurant.
- They (live) in Madrid for ten years before they moved to Paris.
- He (watch) a film when I interrupted him.
- By the time she arrived, the plane (leave).
- They (go) to Hawaii last summer.
- He (never/try) Brazilian food before he went there.
- (they/eat) out last night?
- We (wait) for an hour before the train arrived.
- I (see) that film twice.
- He was tired; he (not/sleep) well the previous night.

(10x2=20)

6 Choose the correct word(s).

- I haven't travelled abroad **from/since** I was a child.
- He **used to/would** have blond hair when he was a kid.
- He **has been travelling/travelled** constantly for the past two months.
- I **didn't use to sunbathe/haven't sunbathed** when I was younger.
- They haven't finished **already/yet**.
- What **have you been doing/had you been doing** all this time?
- I **was/have been** in Singapore this time last year.
- I **used to/would** have a pet rabbit when I was little.
- She has **already/since** left.
- By the time/Since** he came, it had stopped raining.

(10x1=10)

Writing

7 Read the rubric, then write your article.

Your teacher has asked you to write a description of a place you have visited and your stay there. Write your description (120-180 words).

Check your progress

- talk about travel & holidays
- talk about transport
- talk about hotel facilities & services
- describe past events
- describe holiday problems
- describe pictures
- ask for information
- express dissatisfaction/surprise/disbelief/sympathy
- write a description of a visit to a place

GOOD ✓ VERY GOOD // EXCELLENT ///

Festivals & Celebrations

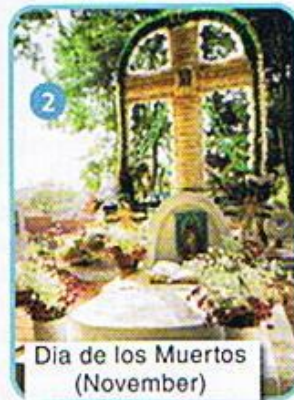
Module 4

MODULE OBJECTIVES

- ▶ **Vocabulary**
 - celebrations/festivals
 - national holidays & celebrations
 - feelings
 - prepositional phrases
 - phrasal verbs with *make*
 - word formation: adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less*
- ▶ **Reading**
 - multiple choice
 - answer questions
- ▶ **Grammar**
 - relative clauses
 - defining/non-defining relative clauses
 - comparatives/superlatives
 - comparisons
- ▶ **Listening**
 - true/false statements
 - intonation in exclamations
 - multiple choice
- ▶ **Speaking**
 - invitations
 - make decisions
- ▶ **Writing**
 - paragraph comparing & contrasting celebrations
 - a description of a celebration
- ▶ **Language Focus**
 - phrasal verbs & prepositions
 - word formation
 - grammar in focus
- ▶ **Progress Check**

Celebrations/Festivals

1 Complete the gaps with: *scare away, honour, set off, partying, dress up, torches, altars, lanterns, patron, costumes.*



- A** The Mexicans 1) the spirits of their ancestors. Family and friends make 2) and put food and flowers on them.
- B** The British 3) as witches or ghosts. They put candles inside 4) made of pumpkins to 5) evil spirits.
- C** In Valencia, people celebrate the feast of San José, the 6) saint of carpenters. They 7) fireworks and watch street processions.
- D** People in Shetland, Scotland dress in Viking 8), light 9) and drag a full-size replica Viking longship along the streets which they burn. Then, there is 10) and dancing.

2 Match the descriptions A-D to the festivals 1-4.
 🔊 Listen and check.

3 Think of a celebration in your country or in another European country. Use phrases from the list to present it to the class.

- *put up decorations* – *offer presents* – *prepare a special meal*
- *set off fireworks* – *have a barbecue* – *watch a street parade*
- *dress in costumes* – *dance* – *play games*
- *bake a cake* – *blow candles* – *have a party*

In my country we celebrate ... on ... We ...

4a Reading

1 a) Check these words in the Word List.

- stand in the streets • bonfire • parade
- shallow wooden barrels • burning tar
- eye-catching costumes • fancy dress
- ritual • hurl barrels
- cheer and applaud

b) Use words/phrases from Ex. 1a in the correct form to complete the paragraph. Which picture does it match?

The picture shows a night parade. People are
 1) watching some men dressed in
 2) They have 3)
 on their heads with 4) in them.
 Some are holding lit torches. They may want to light
 a 5) I think it's winter time
 because everyone is wearing heavy clothes.

STUDY SKILLS

Predicting content

Read the title of a text, then read the first and the last sentence in each paragraph. This will help you understand what the text is about.

2 Read the title, then read the first and the last sentence in each paragraph. What is the text about?

Listen, read and check. What is the author's intention?

3 Choose the best answer according to the text. Give reasons for your answers.

- 1 People go to Allendale at New Year to
 - A walk in the countryside.
 - B spend a quiet weekend.
 - C see a traditional event.
 - D help prepare a festival.
- 2 The word 'that' in line 13 refers to
 - A the ritual.
 - B the village.
 - C the time the event starts.
 - D midnight.

THE TAR BAAL

A The village of Allendale is **nestled** in the North Pennines of Northumberland, an area of **outstanding natural beauty**, in the north of England. It is a typical sleepy English village where, normally, nothing much happens except for a few visitors on country walks turning up at the weekend. But once a year that all changes and Allendale becomes a **hive of activity** as preparations are made for an unusual festival and the arrival of **flocks of** visitors. Every year on the 31st December, the village is packed with people who have come to **witness** an ancient ritual, the Tar Barrel Fire Festival, known locally, as the Tar Baal.

B The celebration doesn't start, officially, until a quarter to midnight but hours before *that*, people of all ages begin to gather in the streets of Allendale. Crowds stand in the streets and the main village square in anticipation of the evening's festivities. If the weather is very wintry then people wrap up in lots of thick warm clothing so as not to get too **chilled** while waiting for the main event to start.

C At around 11 pm people begin to **swarm** around a huge unlit bonfire in the middle of the square. Parents lift their children onto their shoulders to make sure they get a clear view of the entertainment. Then, towards the last hour of the old year, a brass band begins to play. It is now nearly midnight and 45 Allendale men, called Guisers, **balance** shallow wooden barrels filled with burning tar on their heads. Each barrel can weigh as much as 35 pounds, nearly 16 kilos, quite a weight to carry on your head! The men then begin to parade through the streets of Allendale. They walk two by two with the band playing in the middle of the procession as sparks and flames from the burning barrels light up the dark winter night. The men

are dressed in **eye-catching costumes**. Traditionally, they all used to dress up as court jesters from the **Elizabethan era**, but in more recent years the men have performed the ritual in all kinds of fancy dress. You might see a Roman gladiator or a children's cartoon character like Scooby Doo pass you by. The one thing the participants all have in common, however, is that they are from Allendale families. The right to take part in the festival as a Guiser is only ever passed down the generations from father to son. Some Guisers have performed the task for as many as fifty years.

D Once the Guisers have completed a circuit of the village they gather at the bonfire, or Baal, just as the clock is about to strike midnight. Then they **hurl** their barrels onto the fire while everyone shouts 'Be damned to he who throws last!' As the new year is welcomed in, people may break into singing the traditional New Year's song *Auld Lang Syne*, while others are content to simply warm themselves by the flames of the fire, especially if they've been standing in the cold for hours!

E No one knows for sure how the centuries old tar barrel festival began. With **no documented evidence** to give proof of its origins, the only explanation for the spectacle is in local folklore, which has linked the event to the

invasion of Vikings from Scandinavia in the 8th century, as well as a pagan belief in fire gods.



- 3 The fire ritual starts at
 A 11:45 pm. C midnight.
 B 11:00 pm. D about 10 pm.
- 4 The brass band
 A lights the tar barrels.
 B parades through the village with the men.
 C plays for over an hour.
 D has forty five musicians in it.
- 5 The men in the parade
 A are given a special name for the ceremony.
 B must all live inside the village boundary.
 C are all only sons.
 D have to wear the same clothes.
- 6 Just before the New Year begins, the men
 A sing traditional songs.
 B warm themselves by the fire.
 C light the bonfire.
 D shout insults at the crowd.
- 7 According to the author, the origins of the festival are
 A Scandinavian. C English.
 B pagan. D unknown.
- 8 The writer's purpose is to
 A explain the reasons for the festival.
 B criticise an old fashioned practice.
 C praise a community that has remained traditional.
 D describe a ritual and its traditions.

4 In your own words, and based on the text, answer the questions. Do not copy from the text.

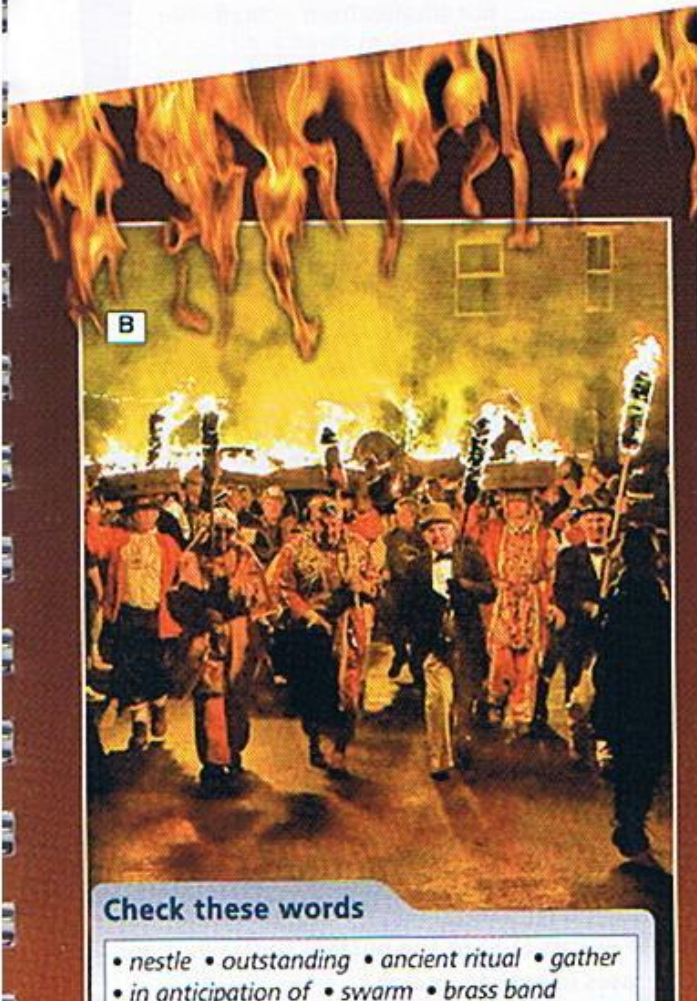
- 1 What is life usually like in Allendale?
- 2 How have the men's costumes changed over the years?
- 3 How do people in Allendale welcome in the New Year?
- 4 Why shouldn't people miss this event?

5 Find words or phrases in the text that mean:

- arriving (para A) • crowded (para A)
- wear (para B)
- most important feature (para B)
- parade (para C) • costumes (para C)
- a journey all the way round (para D)
- traditional stories (para E)

6 Write the opposites to the following. Check in your dictionaries.

- 1 sleepy village ≠
- 2 ancient ritual ≠
- 3 gather ≠
- 4 shallow barrel ≠
- 5 colourful costumes ≠
- 6 traditional song ≠



Check these words

- nestle • outstanding • ancient ritual • gather
- in anticipation of • swarm • brass band
- shallow • procession • court jester • gladiator
- complete a circuit • hurl • spectacle • invasion



Make notes under the headings: *Name of festival - Place - Date - Reason - Activities*. Use your notes to present the festival to your partner either in English or in Polish.



How do you welcome the New Year in your country or in other European countries? Compare and contrast the celebrations to those people have in Allendale. In three minutes write a few sentences. Tell the class.

4b

Vocabulary

Vocabulary from the text

- 1** Choose the correct word.
- The festival **pulls/attracts** a lot of tourists every year.
 - Josh **pulled/lifted** his little brother onto his shoulders so that he could see the parade.
 - People in funny costumes **parade/march** in the streets dancing and singing.
 - Brian **disguised/dressed up** as a Viking.
 - He **watched/looked** the people dance around the fire, then burn the paper effigy.
 - They **stayed/waited** for hours before the parade started.
 - The event is **joined/linked** to some old **traditions/habits**.
 - A lot of people **gather/collect** to watch the parade.
 - They build a fire in the **main/ chief** square of the village.
 - He climbed up a tree to get a good **scene/view** of the event.
 - The celebration has changed in **late/recent** years.

2 Complete the gaps with the correct form of:

- **witness** • **attend** • **appear**

- Those who wish to the festival should make an early booking.
- John the explosion and called the police.
- A scary figure at the end of the street and walked slowly towards us.

- **crowd** • **audience**
- **spectator** • **viewer**

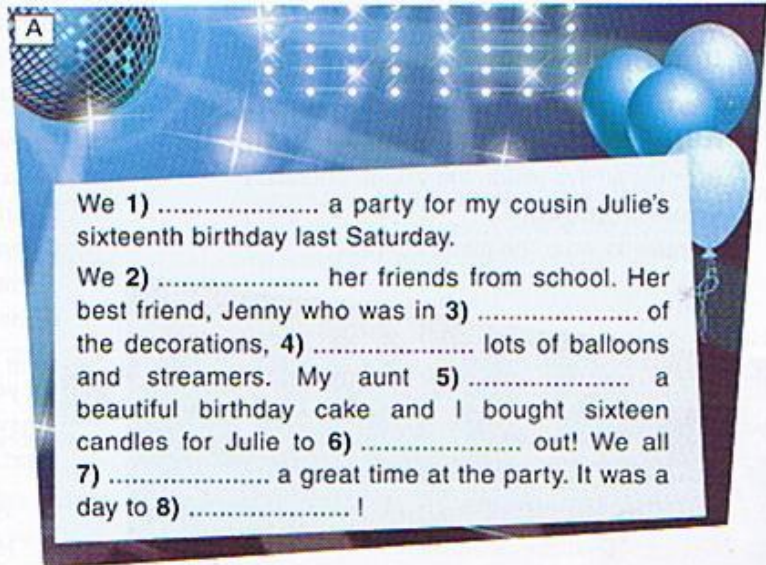
- The applauded the cast at the end of the play.
- The soap opera is watched by millions of
- 10,000 watched the match.
- A huge was waiting in the square to attend the event.

Topic Vocabulary National holidays & celebrations

3 Complete the gaps with words from the lists.

- **blow** • **baked** • **threw** • **had** • **remember**
- **charge** • **invited** • **put up**

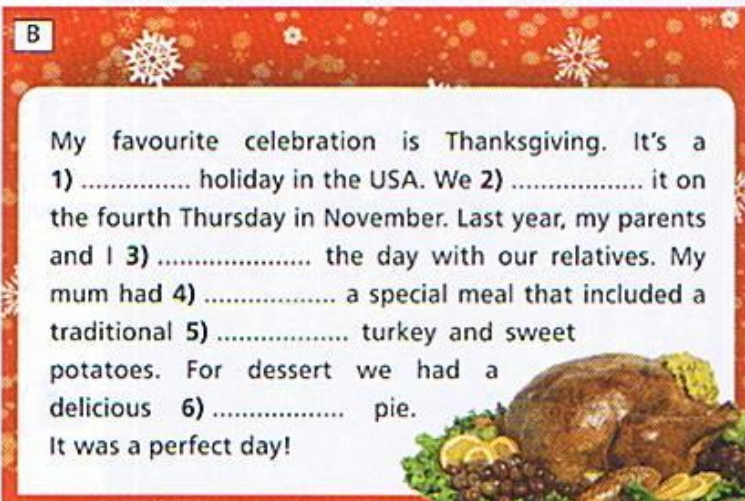
A



We 1) a party for my cousin Julie's sixteenth birthday last Saturday.
 We 2) her friends from school. Her best friend, Jenny who was in 3) of the decorations, 4) lots of balloons and streamers. My aunt 5) a beautiful birthday cake and I bought sixteen candles for Julie to 6) out! We all 7) a great time at the party. It was a day to 8)

- **national** • **pumpkin** • **roast** • **celebrate**
- **planned** • **shared**

B



My favourite celebration is Thanksgiving. It's a 1) holiday in the USA. We 2) it on the fourth Thursday in November. Last year, my parents and I 3) the day with our relatives. My mum had 4) a special meal that included a traditional 5) turkey and sweet potatoes. For dessert we had a delicious 6) pie.
 It was a perfect day!

4 Match the events (1-6) to the phrases (a-f). What are these phrases in your language?

1	wedding	a	Wishing you both a world of happiness!
2	birth	b	Best wishes for a happy retirement!
3	birthday	c	Best wishes on getting a new start.
4	new job	d	Many happy returns of the day.
5	retirement	e	My condolences.
6	funeral	f	Congratulations on the new arrival.

5 Choose the correct words.

St Patrick's Day is a **1) public/general/social** holiday in Ireland. It takes **2) place/part/action** on 17th March. There are street **3) parades/marches/routes** with colourful floats and **4) walking/marching/pacing** bands. People wear green clothes and hats with a shamrock, which is Ireland's national **5) symbol/sign/logo**.



A



B

In the USA, July 4th is known as Independence Day and **1) celebrates/honours/praises** American independence from Great Britain. It's a national holiday. Most towns **2) keep/hold/run** parades in the morning, then in the evening they **3) go/play/attend** concerts and **4) let off/set out/give out** fireworks. People wear red, white and blue suits or hats.

Feelings

6 a) How do the people feel? Match the sentences (1-5) to the adjectives (a-e).

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 1 | I couldn't believe it when I saw my favourite uncle standing at the door. | a disappointed |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 2 | I couldn't wait to join in with the dancers and take part in the parade. | b proud |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 3 | We had to queue up for hours before we got packed in with others like sardines in a small hall. Outrageous! | c surprised |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 4 | It was all so badly organised I really didn't enjoy it. | d excited |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 5 | It was a great ceremony. I couldn't believe my little one was a graduate. | e angry |

b) When was the last time you felt this way? Tell the class.

I felt disappointed when I found out that my cousin hadn't invited me to his party.

Prepositional phrases

7 Fill in: *into, of, to, in (x2), about, on (x2)*. Check in the Word List.

- We were really excited going to the party.
- They organised a party honour of their grandparents.
- They carved the pumpkins and put them display.
- Preparations begin months advance.
- Remembrance Day takes place in Britain the Sunday closest to 11th November every year.
- The audience burst applause.
- Mr Harris wasn't able to attend in person, but thanks his generosity we raised a huge amount of money for the charity.
- The children were full enthusiasm for the event.

Phrasal verbs: MAKE

8 Replace the words in bold with an appropriate phrasal verb from the spidergram. Check in the Word List. Make any other necessary changes in the sentences.



- I **couldn't understand** what the name on the card was.
- It was nice that Peter and Jane **became friends again** after the quarrel.
- I'm sorry I forgot your birthday. I promise I'll **compensate** you.
- I insisted he **pay for** the damage he caused.
- We don't want to go to the party; we need to **think of** a good excuse.

Word formation (adjectives ending in -ful/-less)

9 Read the theory, then complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Adjectives ending in **-ful** show that the person/thing described has that quality. *a beautiful girl* (indicates beauty)
 Adjectives ending in **-less** show that the person/thing described doesn't have that quality. *a fearless boy* (not having fear)

- It was a party and everyone enjoyed it. (SUCCESS)
- We hope you find the tips for the party preparations (HELP)
- She appeared in a stunning dress and left everyone (SPEECH)
- It was of him to talk to her like that in front of her friends. (SENSE)

4c

Grammar in use

Relative clauses


Up Helly Aa

Every year on the last Tuesday in January, Shetland, Scotland is invaded by Vikings. Not real Vikings, of course, but people **who** disguise themselves to look like Vikings. Europe's largest fire festival, **which** is also known as Up Helly Aa Day, began in the 1880s **when** the young men of Shetland decided to organise a parade through the towns of Shetland Islands.

Nowadays, the torch-lit processions can consist of as many as a thousand men — women are not allowed to participate — dressed up in handmade Viking costumes, holding shields and weapons. As they drag a replica of a Viking longboat through the streets of the town, spectators line the route.

Around 19:30 the Vikings form a circle around the longboat and sing Up Helly Aa, a song **whose** traditions date back many years. The Vikings then set the longboat on fire with their torches.

After that, the Vikings visit halls all around the towns **where** they put on plays, and sing and dance. People of all ages come to enjoy these performances. The entertainment often lasts until the early hours of the next day, so Wednesday is a public holiday.



▶ see p. 155 (GR6)

- 1 Read the text. Which of the words in bold do we use to talk about: people? time? animals/objects? places? to show possession? Are there similar structures in Polish?

- 2 Fill in: *who, which, whose, when* or *where*.

- La Tomatina is a festival is held in Valencia.
- People attend this festival have a lot of fun.
- The Plaza del Pueblo is the place the fight takes place.
- La Tomatina, origins are unclear, is said to have started in 1945 in the town square of Buñol.
- August is the month the festival takes place.

Defining/Non-defining relative clauses

Those **who** are under 18 can't attend the event. (defining relative clause)

Tony, **who** loves dressing up, has a huge collection of costumes. (non-defining relative clause)

▶ see p. 156 (GR7)

- 3 a) Read the examples. Which type of relative clause does each sentence (1-6) describe?

- It gives necessary information.
- It is not put between commas.
- It gives extra information.
- It cannot be omitted.
- It can be omitted.
- It is put between commas.

- b) Complete the sentences with *who, which, whose, where, when*. Which relative clause is defining? non-defining? Use commas where necessary.

- My cousin Lisa is the sort of girl loves dressing up.
- Jim loves telling stories says he saw a ghost.
- The book he's reading is about dragons.
- That's the boy sister is a magician.
- This is the shop you can rent a costume.
- August was the month we went to Spain.
- My sister is studying at Cambridge is a famous university.
- The costume you're wearing is great.

- 4 Write complete sentences. Use the relative pronoun or adverb in brackets.

- Last March/I be/in Spain/I attend/the Las Fallas festival (**where**)
Last March, I was in Spain, where I attended the Las Fallas festival.
- Brian/family come from the USA/have a party/this Saturday evening (**whose**)
- The lantern/Kate make/be beautiful (**which**)
- The festival/takes place/every August/attract/many tourists (**which**)
- Peter/be the person/can help you/decorate the house (**who**)
- Summer/be the time/the festival/take place (**when**)

5 Complete the sentences about yourself. Which of the underlined words are used for: people? things? animals? places? time?

- 1 I don't like stories which/that
- 2 I'd never go to a place where
- 3 I like someone who/that
- 4 I once met a man whose
- 5 It was this time last year when

Comparatives & superlatives



Lisa has got short hair, but Sue's got shorter hair than Lisa. Joy has got the longest hair of all. She is more beautiful than Sue! Joy is the most beautiful of all.

see p. 156 (GR7)

6 a) Look at the pictures and the examples. How do we form the comparative/ superlative? Write sentences to tell the class. Is it the same in Polish?

b) Compare the three girls.

	Lisa	Sue	Joy
careful	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
sing well	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓
funny	✓	✓✓✓	✓✓
helpful	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓
old	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
tall	✓✓	✓	✓✓✓

1 Sue is more careful than Lisa, but Joy is the most careful of all.

7 Put the adjectives into the correct comparative or superlative form.

- 1 Steve is person I've ever met. (**cheerful**)
- 2 This cake is than that one. (**cheap**)
- 3 Sandra is than Mary. (**helpful**)
- 4 His party was I've ever been to. (**good**)
- 5 Her costume was of all. (**bad**)
- 6 His present was than I expected. (**expensive**)

Comparisons

- 1 It's getting colder and colder as the days go by.
- 2 Jack is twice as strong as his brother.
- 3 The earlier we leave, the earlier we'll arrive.
- 4 He isn't as funny as his sister.

see p. 156 (GR7)

8 Read the examples. Use the structures to complete the exchanges.

- 1 A: What do you think of Ann?
B: Well, she isn't (**friendly**) she looks.
- 2 A: It looks like summer is here already.
B: Yes, it's getting and (**hot**) every day.
- 3 A: I wish I was (**slim**) you are.
B: Don't be silly. You've got a lovely figure!
- 4 A: Why are you in a hurry?
B: The (**fast**) we pack, the (**fast**) we can leave.

9 Compare yourself with other family members or friends. Use these adjectives: tall, short, old, young, funny, hardworking.

I am **the shortest** in my family. My brother isn't as slim as me. My friend Bob is **slimmer than** me.

Key word transformations

10 Use the word in bold to complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use two to five words. Do not change the word in bold.

- 1 Her costume was better than mine. **GOOD**
My costume hers.
- 2 Tom, whose sister is Ann, was the winner. **WHO**
It was Ann's winner.
- 3 His costume is more expensive than mine. **LESS**
My costume his.
- 4 Billy's costume won a prize. **WHOSE**
Billy was the boy a prize.
- 5 Her hat was nicer than the others! **NICEST**
Her hat all!

11 Spend two or three minutes revising the grammar structures you have learnt in this lesson. In pairs, make sentences using them. Tell the class or your friend.

4d Listening skills

- 1 The *Day of the Dead* is a Mexican festival. What do you know about it?



- 2 a) You will hear a TV commentary about a cultural festival. Before you listen check these words in the Word List.

• *origins* • *early civilisation* • *gloomy*
 • *departed* • *altar* • *grave* • *festivity*
 • *festoon* • *slap-up* • *consume* • *nutrition*

- b) Listen and complete the sentences.

- At the graves in the cemetery the altars are covered in candles, flowers and
- People's homes are also decorated with ...

- c) Listen again and decide if the sentences are *True* or *False*.

- The Day of the Dead dates back to the Aztecs.
- The festival isn't a sad occasion but a bright and happy one.
- Mexicans believe that the spirits of their dead relatives actually take part in the celebrations.
- Mexicans don't like people to tell jokes about the dead.
- The street candles are to guide families on their way to the gravesite.
- Mexicans believe the journey the spirits make is quick and easy.

- 3 Tell your partner two reasons why you would like to attend this festival.

Intonation in exclamations

see p. 156 (GR7)

- 4 a) Read the table, then complete the gaps with *so* or *such* (a/an).

such a/an + countable noun
such + uncountable noun/plural noun
so/how + adjective/adverb

- It's lovely day!
- It's important festival!
- It's long a history!
- They decorate the altars lovingly!
- It's good food!

- b) Listen and check, then say. Mind the intonation.

- 5 a) You will hear a radio programme about a festival in Europe. Before you listen check these words: *Lent*, *lavish*, *misty*, *decline*, *revive*, *heyday*, *outrageous*, *distinctive*, *sinister* in the Word List.

- b) Listen and for statements 1-6 choose the correct answer (A, B or C). What style is the text? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

- Sophia is an expert on
 A *Lent*. B the Rio Carnival.
 C the history of Venice.
- When the interviewer visited the Venice Carnival he was most impressed by
 A the costumes.
 B its history and traditions.
 C the party atmosphere.
- According to Sophia, during carnival people
 A should give up eating various foods.
 B try to be pure and devout.
 C enjoy feasting on meat, fish and dairy products.
- The Venice Carnival stopped entirely in
 A the 18th century. B the 20th century.
 C 1979.
- Wearing masks at carnival first came about so that people
 A of all classes could mix.
 B could gossip easily.
 C wouldn't recognise each other.
- Sophia thinks that carnival didn't develop in Britain as a festival because
 A of the Notting Hill carnival in the summer.
 B British people don't like street parties.
 C of the weather conditions in Britain.

- 6 Compare the Venice Carnival to a similar celebration in your country or in another European country.



Speaking skills 4e

1 Listen to the music. Imagine you are at a birthday party. Describe the scene. Think about: *where it is, when it is, who is there and what is happening.*

I'm at my friend's house in the garden. It's ... etc

2 Read the first and the last exchanges in the dialogue. What do you think Janet is going to do on Friday?

Listen and read to find out. Is the dialogue *formal* or *informal*? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

Ray: Hi, Janet. I haven't seen you for ages. How are you?
 Janet: I'm fine, Ray, thanks. I've been a bit busier than usual lately as I've got exams in two weeks. You?
 Ray: Life is as good as it gets ... I'm glad I ran into you. I'm having a birthday party on Friday. Would you like to come? It will be the best party ever.
 Janet: Sounds good. But I've got a lot of studying to do.
 Ray: Oh, come on. It'll only be for a few hours. It's going to be a 70s theme party with loads of disco music, party food and competitions with prizes. The break will do you good.
 Janet: Well it certainly sounds a lot more exciting than studying. OK, I'd love to come. What time?
 Ray: How about 8? We can have a chat and catch up on all our news before everyone gets there at 9.
 Janet: I can't think of a better way than that to start the evening! I can't wait.
 Ray: Great! And don't forget to wear something 70s.
 Janet: I won't forget. I'll try to get the best 70s outfit ever. See you on Friday.

Invitations

3 Work in pairs. You are at a college in England. Use phrases from the language box to invite your friend to the event advertised in the poster.

The Students' Club is holding an **END OF TERM PARTY**

Come in Fancy Dress!

There will be great music from the 60s until today.

Lots of food and refreshments.

Plus a dance competition.

Tickets only £2 each!

On Friday 22nd May, 8 pm.

Inviting	Accepting	Declining
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do come to ... Please come to ... (How) Would you like to (+inf)? What/How about (+ -ing form)? I'm thinking of... 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I'd be glad to (+inf) With pleasure. Thank you. That will be (very) nice. Sounds good I'd like/love to. I wouldn't miss it for the world. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unfortunately I can't (+inf). I'm afraid I can't. No, I'd rather not. (I'm sorry but) I can't because I'm (+ -ing form) Sounds good, but (+clause)

Making decisions

4 A friend of yours is having a birthday party and has asked you to help with the preparations. Look at the pictures and decide which three things are the most appropriate. Complete the dialogue.



A: I think we should have some/a 1), because they are/it's traditional at birthday parties.

B: Yes, I agree, I don't think we need 2) or 3) – they aren't really appropriate, are they?

A: No, not really.

B: What about some/a 4)?

A: Good idea. How about some/a 5)?

B: Hmm, maybe not for a birthday party.

A: Perhaps you're right. We'll definitely need some/a 6), though.

B: Oh, for sure! I think that's enough.

A: OK. We're agreed then. We'll have 7), 8) and 9) Let's get started!

4f

Writing A description of a celebration

▶ Writing Bank 4 p. 145 (WB4)

Rubric analysis

- 1 Read the rubric, find the key words, then answer the questions.

Your teacher has asked you to write a description of a festival you have attended, including information about the preparations and activities on the actual day. Write your composition (120-180 words).

- 1 What should you write about?
- 2 Which of the following must you include in your composition?
 - A important events in your country
 - B what you did during the festival
 - C a detailed description of the town
 - D preparations for the festival
- 3 Which tense(s) should you mainly use?

Model analysis

- 2 Read the composition below and put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

KEENE PUMPKIN FESTIVAL

A The Keene Pumpkin Festival is a food festival which 1) *takes place* (**take place**) every year in Keene, New Hampshire, USA on a Saturday in mid to late October. During the festival, locals and visitors 2) (**attempt**) to set the world record for collecting the largest number of lit pumpkin lanterns.

B When I 3) (**arrive**) in Keene, invited by a friend of mine, I was impressed by the preparations. All the residents 4) (**buy**) big pumpkins and 5) (**carve**) faces in them. Then they 6) (**put**) them on a huge stand in the town. They 7) (**also/prepare**) all sorts of delicious pumpkin dishes for the festival.

C On the day of the festival, the streets were crowded with people. I 8) (**take part**) in a pie eating competition, but I couldn't eat much. Later, there were several live concerts where everyone 9) (**dance**) and had fun. The last event of the evening was the official pumpkin count. They 10) (**light**) all the candles in the pumpkins and they 11) (**look**) amazing. Then, there was a big fireworks display. It was awesome.

D At the end of the festival, everyone was thrilled! I 12) (**have**) such a great time I was really sorry to go home. I can't wait for next year's festival!

- 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 What is the name of the festival & what it is about?
- 2 What were the preparations before the festival?
- 3 What did the person do during the festival?
- 4 What were the person's feelings?

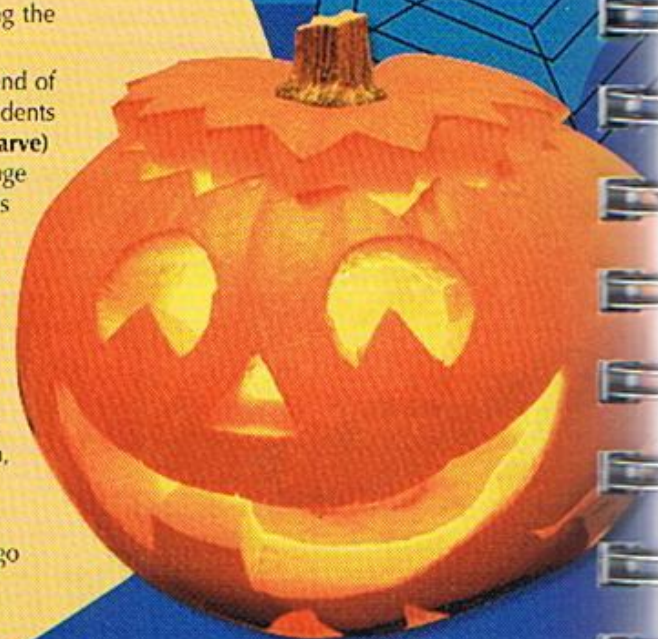
STUDY SKILLS

Collocations

Collocations are two or more words that often go together. Learning to use them correctly makes you sound natural in English.

- 4 Choose the word that does not collocate.

- 1 large – colourful – fancy **costumes**
- 2 live – fast – long **music**
- 3 street – surprise – warm **party**
- 4 enthusiastic – ready – lively **atmosphere**
- 5 romantic – modern – huge **dance**
- 6 strong – delicious – mouth-watering **food**
- 7 (be in a) good – bad – scary **mood**



5 a) Fill in the gaps in the paragraphs with adjectives from the list.

- *sad* • *unforgettable* • *friendly*
- *incredible*

A
When the festival was over, I felt a bit **1)** and I didn't want to go home. I had had a(n) **2)** weekend, so at least I had my memories! Everyone had been so **3)** and all the bands had been absolutely **4)** I am already thinking about booking my ticket for next year!

- *colourful* • *exciting* • *huge*
- *live* • *yearly*

B
The Festival of the Tartans is a **1)** festival. Preparations start two weeks before. People make **2)** floats using streamers and thousands and thousands of tissue flowers in preparation for the **3)** street parade. People also prepare **4)** barbecue pits where they will cook chicken and burgers for the hungry crowds. Volunteers build a stage where performers will play **5)** music late into the night.

b) Which extract describes: *how a festival is celebrated annually?* *a festival the writer attended?*

Error correction

6 Read the extract. There are five mistakes. Correct them.

Every year at the end of February visitors from all over the world come to Rio de Janeiro to take part in the greatest festival in the world – the rio carnival. People started preparing for the event months in advance. They designed colourful costumes, bands practise there music and dancers work hard to perfect their samba steps.

Your turn

7 a) Read the rubric and find the key words.

Your teacher has asked you to write a description of an interesting festival in your country that you attended. Write your composition (120-180 words).

b) Think of a festival and make notes under the headings. **Name** – **Date/place** – **Preparations** – **Events during the festival** – **Feelings/comments** Use your notes and phrases from the Useful Language box to make sentences about the festival.

8 Use your answers in Ex. 7b to write your composition. Follow the plan. Use phrases from the Useful Language box.



Useful Language

- ... is held every ... in
- It takes place in
- Preparations start
- People (*made floats, cleaned their houses, put up decorations, etc.*)
- On the actual day (*there were parades in the streets, people dressed up in costumes, people watched floats carrying ... through the streets, etc.*)
- In the evening people (*had dinner with their friends and family, had parties, watched fireworks displays, etc.*)
- It was a/an (*great/amazing, etc*) festival.
- Everyone had a great time.
- It was a day full of surprises.

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *name, place & reason for the festival*

Main Body

(Para 2) *preparations*

(Para 3) *how people celebrated the festival*

Conclusion

(Para 4) *feelings, comments*

Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for the following:

- Does your composition have clearly laid out paragraphs?
- Does each paragraph have a main idea?
- Have you used adjectives to make the description more interesting?
- Have you used appropriate tenses to narrate the event?
- Have you checked your spelling and punctuation?

Language Knowledge 4

- 1** Think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Puck Fair

Every August, Puck Fair, one **0)** of Ireland's oldest festivals, is held in Killorglin, County Kerry. Puck Fair began as a harvest festival in 1613, during the reign of King James. In **1)** days, most of the local people were farmers and the wild goat, **2)** as "puck", was an important symbol of fertility. **3)** the local people still catch a wild goat and crown it "King" of the festival, just **4)** they did in King James' day, many other things have changed **5)** the centuries. Puck Fair is now a world famous street fair and it's about **6)** more than a goat! The quiet country town of Killorglin is transformed **7)** August when 100,000 people arrive for three days of free family entertainment. There's **8)** to see and do, including live music, comedy shows, puppet theatre, even circus skills workshops. Some people say the crowning of the goat **9)** the highlight of this fair, but **10)** me it was enjoying fun times with people from **11)** over the world, topped off by an amazing fireworks show **12)** midnight on the final night.

- 2** Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Mountain Meadow Ranch

Mountain Meadow Ranch is **0)** *nestled* high up in the Sierra Nevada mountains of northern California. It's an **1)** beautiful place to visit, with lush green meadows and lakes sitting below **2)** forested mountains. Summer camps here have grown in **3)** since the 1950s and lots of young people keep coming back, probably because it **4)** independence and campers are given so much **5)** of choice. As well as a huge range of sports, there are also **6)** art activities, like photography and pottery. The more **7)** teenagers can go on a 3-day hike to climb an **8)** volcano and camp overnight in the forest. It's fun to try new and **9)** things, and even better are the added **10)** you can't have in the city – like roasting marshmallows on a camp fire under the stars!

NESTLE
INCREDIBLE
DENSE
POPULAR
COURAGE
FREE
INTEREST
ADVENTURE
AMAZE
CHALLENGE
EXPERIENCE

- 3** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

0 "I'm sorry I didn't come with you," said Jane.
APOLOGISED

Jane *apologised* for not coming with us.

1 Dad, could you take us to Mary's birthday party in your car? **LIFT**

Dad, could you
..... to Mary's birthday party in your car?

2 The last time I saw Sarah was the day she got married ten years ago. **WEDDING**

I haven't
..... day ten years ago.

3 "Luke, would you like to go to the carnival?" asked Elena. **FANCY**

"Luke,
..... to the carnival?" asked Elena.

4 The concert was so good that I didn't want it to end. **SUCH**

It was
..... that I didn't want it to end.

5 Keep your ticket because you may need to show it again. **ASKED**

Keep your ticket in
..... show it again.

6 Martha hadn't been to a live concert for over three years. **MORE**

It was
..... Martha had been to a live concert.

7 Sonia was really jealous when she saw my costume. **MADE**

The sight of my
..... really jealous.

8 "Don't blame me if you're late for the ceremony," said Chris. **HIS**

Chris said that it
..... if I was late for the ceremony.

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- By the time we finished the report everyone else home.
A has gone C went
B had gone D was going
- "We really need a break."
"Yes, we since 9 o'clock this morning."
A have been revising C revise
B are revising D were revising
- "Luckily the mistake last night before the article went to the printer's."
"That saved us a lot of work!"
A discovered C has discovered
B been discovered D was discovered
- I carry my money in my pocket because I am afraid
A of losing them C of losing it
B that I lose it D I lost them
- We didn't finish on time our best efforts.
A because of C regardless
B in spite of D even
- Help to some cookies!
A yourself B ourselves C herself D you
- Helen's never late so she be held up in traffic.
A should C must
B can D needs to
- Randy succeeded for the 100 m sprint.
A to qualify C qualify
B in qualifying D qualifying
- Northern Europe's economies are heavily natural resources.
A depended with C depending on
B depended for D dependent on
-, I didn't look forward to exercising at the gym, but now I really enjoy it.
A Firstly C At first
B First D In the first
- If you'd been more attentive, you what the teacher was saying.
A would hear C would have heard
B could hear D must hear
- As soon as Sarah in, ask her to help you.
A comes C is coming
B will come D would come

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- It's preferable to buy vegetables in small for your immediate use.
A numbers C quantities
B volumes D loads
- I took great in telling everyone they had been given a pay rise.
A amusement C enjoyment
B pleasure D fun
- The new school rule applies to all students without
A exception C distinction
B alteration D exclusion
- Some children are never to the fine arts.
A shown C exposed
B accustomed D acquainted
- Twenty miners were underground when the mine collapsed.
A caught C hidden
B held D trapped
- It will take two to four weeks to your university application.
A process C progress
B proceed D programme
- Some people think that the theatre is a form of entertainment to the cinema.
A better B higher C superior D greater
- When you go mountain climbing for the first time, you must be of all the potential dangers.
A awake B aware C alert D attentive
- Everyone clapped when the tennis players appeared on the
A pitch C court
B stadium D course
- The sea was and I got seasick.
A wavy B uneven C fierce D rough
- There were twenty for the job, but only Jane was hired.
A entrants C employees
B employers D candidates
- You are required to fill in this application and sent it to us via email.
A letter C paper
B form D document

Language Focus 4

- 1** Use the words in their correct form to complete the gaps.

• **packed** • **crowded**
• **stuffed** • **full**

- Teddy bears are normally with soft, white cotton.
- This brochure is of ideas for weekend trips.
- The bus was with people so there were no seats free to sit down.
- The city centre is on the first day of the festival.

• **anticipation** • **expectation**
• **hope** • **suspense**

- Richard has of working as a teacher after he graduates from college.
- Bob prepared lots of food in of a big crowd coming to his party.
- The music festival lived up to everyone's
- The film kept everyone in until the murderer was revealed at the end.

• **finalise** • **complete**
• **conclude** • **cease**

- The outdoor celebrations continued when the rain had
- Let me know when you have your holiday plans.
- The mayor the event with a formal speech.
- I need your help to this crossword puzzle!

• **link** • **fasten** • **attach**
• **connect**

- Taking a second to your seatbelt before you drive away could save your life!
- I'm some photos of my party with this email.
- This festival is to several ancient customs.
- The Internet allows you to with people from all over the world.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

- 2** Choose the correct item.

- At midnight, fireworks were set **up/off** all over the town.
- Jane made **up/out** a really good excuse not to go to the party.
- All the artists' works were put **to/on** display during the festival.
- The children dressed **out/up** as fairies for the parade.
- I couldn't make **up for/out** the words on the poster.
- They had a party **for/in** honour of the retiring schoolmaster.
- Thanks **for/to** everyone's enthusiastic participation, it was a great day.
- Polly and Orla had a fight at the party but made **up/up for** later on.
- The townsfolk started preparing for the festival weeks **on/in** advance.
- Ian upset Anita, but he made **up/up for** it by buying her a present.

Word formation

- 3** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

I had an 1) (**amaze**) time at the festival. The whole town was decorated with flowers and many of the villagers wore 2) (**colour**) traditional costumes for the occasion. I really enjoyed the beauty queen contest. I was absolutely 3) (**speech**) when I saw the girls. They were so 4) (**beauty**). I also enjoyed the 5) (**differ**) activities and games, especially the contest for the funniest 6) (**invent**). It was hilarious seeing everyone present their 7) (**total**) mad and 8) (**use**) machines. It was great! Everyone was so 9) (**cheer**). I really appreciated the fact that the hotel 10) (**manage**) gave me a room overlooking the square so I could take photographs. The staff were very 11) (**help**), too. I had a great time. I will be going back next year.

Grammar in Focus

Complete the gaps with an appropriate word.

Walpurgis Night, 1) one of the 2) popular festivals in Europe. It 3) place in countries such as Germany, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania and the Czech Republic. It is held 4) 30th April and it is sort of a springtime Halloween. People 5) bonfires and children 6) up in scary costumes and play tricks 7) people after dark. The festivities also include music, dancing and eating. People have picnics and barbecues 8) start early in the morning and can last 9) day. In Finland, Walpurgis Day is 10) biggest carnival-style festival in the country. The celebration 11) on the evening of 30th April and continues 12) 1st May. It's a great 13) for people to meet friends and have fun.

LOHRI

the bonfire festival

On January 13th, deep in the cold of midwinter, the people of northern India and especially the Punjab region, celebrate the colourful winter fertility festival, Lohri. The origins and reasons for this bonfire festival have been lost in the mists of time, but they are associated with a number of fables and folk legends. One of these is a Punjabi version of Robin Hood, about a great warrior called Dulla Bhatti. Dulla Bhatti had rebelled against the king and he used to rob the rich and rescue poor girls who had been kidnapped and were about to be sold in foreign slave markets. Dulla is a great hero in Punjabi tradition.

Another belief about the Lohri tradition is that it began as a celebration of the eve of the winter solstice, or the shortest day of the year. This is despite the fact that the festival takes place three weeks after the official and scientifically accepted date of the winter solstice on 21st December. But whatever the case may be, everyone agrees that Lohri celebrates the end of the long cold dark winter months and the beginning of the new farming year and that it's a festival that brings everyone together, irrespective of their religion.

On the day of Lohri, children go from door to door singing traditional songs. Many praise the great hero Dulla Bhatti and others are humorous nonsense songs only sung for Lohri. In return for the entertainment, the children receive gifts known as lohri. These are collections of tasty treats made up of many ingredients such as sesame seeds, peanuts, sweets and other goodies. Later on, during the evening's festivities, the children will give out some of the treats they have received and share their bounty with others. One of the reasons for this custom is that the Lohri festival is closely associated with the approaching harvest of winter crops (rabi crops) such as wheat, barley, peas and mustard. Apart from distributing treats to children, people take a variety of foods to temples and other places of worship in order to ensure a good crop.

Later in the day people dress up in their finest and most colourful clothes. The women in rich silk saris and the men in delicately embroidered jackets. As dusk begins to fall large bonfires are lit in the towns and villages all over the territories of northern India. Then people toss sweets and sesame seeds into the fire and sing songs as the men dance the lively Bhangra dances around the fire. Some people also throw milk and water around the fire or perform prayers in honour of the sun god and to ask for his protection in the coming farming year.

After the singing and dancing, when the ceremonies are over and the fire has died out, people take the embers from the bonfire to light a new fire in their homes. They believe the embers will help keep them and their animals healthy and they will also help to ensure a good harvest in the coming months. Then friends and relatives meet to exchange gifts and distribute the goodies collected earlier in the day. A traditional dish of Indian curry with mustard leaves and spinach is prepared and is served with a traditional type of bread made from a variety of different seeds. The fun and feasting usually continues late into the night. The following day is believed to be a favourable day to take a holy bath in the river and practise charity. Lohri is more than just a festival, it is a celebration of the gift of life.

4 Progress Check

Reading

- 1 Read the text and choose the best answer, A, B, C or D, according to the text.
- Lohri is
 - a national holiday in India.
 - celebrated only in the Punjab region.
 - an international festival in India.
 - a seasonal regional festival.
 - Dulla Bhatti
 - used to kidnap girls.
 - is another name for Robin Hood.
 - was an enemy of the king.
 - sold poor people to slave markets.
 - Many people believe that Lohri
 - is not a religious festival.
 - is the shortest day of the year.
 - is the official winter solstice.
 - is a festival for people of all religions.
 - On Lohri day, children
 - sing nonsense songs about a hero.
 - receive and give gifts.
 - visit the local temple.
 - tell their neighbours jokes.
 - People light bonfires
 - before dressing for the ceremonies.
 - late in the evening.
 - only in the countryside of north India.
 - at sunset.
 - During the ceremonies, only men
 - say the prayers to the sun god.
 - perform the ritual dances.
 - sing songs at the bonfire.
 - throw sweets and seeds in the fire.
 - People believe the embers they take home will help
 - cure them of illnesses.
 - their crops to grow.
 - them keep their home fires burning.
 - them acquire more animals.
 - The day after Lohri is considered a good day to
 - bathe in the sea.
 - make a donation.
 - cook a curry.
 - continue feasting.

Progress Check

4

Speaking

2 Choose the correct response.

- A: Please come to my party tomorrow night.
B: **a** I'd love to. **b** I won't forget.
- A: How about going to the cinema this weekend?
B: **a** Sounds good! **b** I wouldn't miss it.
- A: Would you like to come round to my place for dinner?
B: **a** Do come! **b** With pleasure!
- A: Do come to the match tonight.
B: **a** I'm afraid I can't. **b** Yes, you're right.

(4x3=12)

Listening

3 Listen to a conversation between two friends about a festival and complete the sentences.

Kate went **1** _____ for her summer holidays.

During her holiday she went to **2** _____ Festival.

The festival lasted **3** _____.

Kate found the festival **4** _____.

Kate saw the play her friend was acting in **5** _____.

Kate found the stand-up comedians **6** _____.

Kate couldn't eat anything because she had **7** _____.

Ned did **8** _____ during his holiday.

(8x2=16)

Vocabulary

4 Fill in: *symbol, applause, spirits, procession, throw, bonfire, set off, perform, honour, floats.*

- They placed a pile of wood in the town square and made a
- They wear scary costumes to keep the evil away.
- People fireworks in the evening.
- Visitors line the streets to watch the
- People gather to the war dead.
- They the ritual in various costumes.
- They decided to a party.
- We saw colourful with dancers on them and marching bands.
- Ireland's national is the shamrock.
- The audience burst into at the end of the performance. (10x2=20)

Grammar

5 Fill in: *which, who, whose, where or when.*

- Is that the shop he works?
- John, uncle lives in Dublin, went to Ireland.
- Is that the girl won the beauty contest at the festival?
- The film he is watching is scary.
- Halloween, falls on 31st October, is one of the most important holidays in the UK.
- August is the month everyone holds full-moon parties on the beach.
- Mark, captains the football team, broke his leg yesterday.
- Those don't have costumes cannot enter the contest.

(8x1=8)

6 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct form.

- Evelyn is (**tall**) than Lisa.
- The Carnival is (**colourful**) festival of all.
- This pie is (**tasty**) than the others.
- This year's music festival was (**good**) than last year's.
- Who is (**old**) boy in the class?
- He isn't (**clever**) as his brother.
- It is one of (**amazing**) celebrations.
- Halloween is (**exciting**) than Thanksgiving.

(8x1=8)

Writing

7 Read the rubric, then write your composition.

Your teacher has asked you to write a description of a festival you attended. Write your composition describing the preparations and how people celebrated the festival (120-180 words).

(20 marks)

(Total=100)

Check your progress

- talk about various festivals and celebrations
- use defining/non-defining relative clauses
- compare people/things
- invite - accept/refuse invitations
- write an essay describing a festival I attended

GOOD ✓

VERY GOOD //

EXCELLENT ///

Crime

Module 5

MODULE OBJECTIVES

► Vocabulary

- breaking the law
- crime & punishment
- prepositional phrases
- phrasal verbs: *break*
- word formation: prefixes to express opposite meaning

► Reading

- multiple choice
- answer questions

► Grammar

- the passive
- causative form
- clauses of result

► Listening

- a telephone conversation (complete sentences)
- a radio show (multiple choice)

► Speaking

- intonation: in echo questions
- advice/concern
- comparing & contrasting pictures

► Writing

- a description of a forensic photographer's job
- a report

► Language Focus

- phrasal verbs & prepositions
- word formation
- grammar in focus

► Progress Check

Breaking the law

- 1** Complete the newspaper headlines. Use: *hostage, pay, burgled, flees, hurt, steals*. Match them to the crime each is about.

A GUNMAN 1)
WITH CASH FROM BANK

B GANG 2) PICASSO
PAINTING FROM MUSEUM

C ACTRESS'S
HOUSE
3)

D PENSIONER
SERIOUSLY 4)
IN PARK FOR £14.00

E TERRORIST GROUP
TAKES MILLIONAIRE'S
SON 5)

F PARENTS HAVE TO
6) FOR SCHOOL
GRAFFITI

1) mugging

2) burglary

3) vandalism

4) robbery

5) theft

6) kidnapping

- 2** Complete the extracts below. Which of the newspaper headlines in Ex. 1 does each match? Translate the extracts into Polish.

A • *caught* • *escaped*
• *broke* • *stole*

B • *broken* • *masked*
• *showed* • *missing*

A 19-year-old student from Texas 1) into a house in Stanford last Tuesday. He 2) two diamond necklaces and 3) without being 4)

Works of art were stolen from the Museum of Modern Art last Friday. The paintings were discovered 1) around 6:30 am. Museum officials found a 2) window and surveillance cameras 3) two 4) men entering the museum.

- 3** Choose two headlines from Ex. 1 and write or say a few sentences describing what happened.

- 4** Describe the photograph. Write sentences or tell the class.

- 5** Find a news report related to crime in a local newspaper. Translate it into English.



5a Reading

- 1 Do you watch crime drama series on TV? If yes, what's your favourite? Why? If not, what's your favourite TV series? What is it about?
- 2 Check these words in the Word List. How are they related to a forensic photographer?
 - document a crime scene • murder cases • brief on the crime • photograph the victim • fatal road accident
 - scene of a crime • used as evidence • aid investigations
 - take an overall view • focus on individual details
 - close-up images • clear eye

STUDY SKILLS

Paragraph main ideas

The first sentence in a paragraph usually introduces the topic, and helps us to understand the main idea of the paragraph.

- 3 Read the first sentence in each paragraph. What is each paragraph about?

The camera never lies

Crime drama has always held a fascination for the public; now TV viewers have made forensics drama CSI the most watched TV show in the world. But what is it really like to work in Forensics? Forensic photographer Robert Mars provides some clues ...

A I see forensic photography as a way to show the truth. Whatever the story, a photograph can document a crime scene far better than anyone could describe it in court. But the job isn't always the way it appears on TV: I don't only deal with murder cases. During the course of one day I could be photographing anything from the scene of a robbery, a recovered stolen car, a burnt out house or a fatal road accident.

B I usually work from 8 until 4 every weekday, but I'm on call 7 days a week. All the incidents I need to cover are gathered together at the Police Communications Centre and then sent over to me. The officer-in-charge will have briefed me on the crime before I begin my work at the scene. All the evidence must be photographed before Police officers can take it away. If it's a murder investigation, I also photograph the victim before the body is removed by the medical examiner.

C My photos are used to aid investigations and as evidence in court so every detail must be clearly visible to provide an accurate picture. I start by illuminating the scene with key lights and usually I use a flash. If I'm photographing a room, I work with a wide angle lens on my camera to take an overall view from each corner and also from overhead. Then, using a zoom lens, I focus on individual details in context. For example, the distance between a discarded knife and a table could be crucial in

Check these words

- hold a fascination • public • clue • crime scene
- deal with • course of a day • fatal • gather
- officer-in-charge • brief • evidence • victim
- aid • illuminate the scene • wide angle lens
- overall view • crucial • detached • stay focused

4 a) Read the text and for questions 1-8 choose the best answer A, B, C or D. Justify your answers.

- Robert thinks that ...
 - forensic photography is accurately portrayed on television.
 - forensic photography covers more issues than shown on screen.
 - there are elements of truth in TV crime dramas.
 - TV dramas about forensic investigations are completely unrealistic.
- Robert usually works ...
 - Monday to Friday.
 - seven days a week.
 - in the morning only.
 - four to eight hours a day.
- The officer-in-charge gives Robert ...
 - essential information before he goes to a crime scene.
 - all the incidents gathered at the Police Communications Centre.
 - all the evidence that must be photographed.
 - a photo of the victim before a murder investigation.

- To capture the relationship between objects in a room, Robert uses ...
 - key lights.
 - a wide angle lens.
 - a flash.
 - a zoom lens.
- Photographic evidence is always logged with ...
 - the date and time.
 - a list.
 - key pieces of evidence.
 - a description of the scene.
- Enthusiasm for the practical skills of photography ...
 - encouraged Robert to become a forensic photographer.
 - keeps Robert focused on presenting facts.
 - allows Robert to experiment with his images.
 - requires that Robert keeps a clear eye.
- Robert feels this job ...
 - is only for tough people.
 - leaves no room for emotions.
 - can affect one's feelings.
 - causes psychological problems.
- A career in forensics is most suited to a person who ...
 - is prepared for the unexpected.
 - likes excitement.
 - already has an advanced knowledge of photography.
 - likes having a routine.

a murder investigation. Finally, I take close-up images of key pieces of **evidence**. Each photograph gets listed in a photo log which includes a description of the object and the time and date the photo was taken.

D I was inspired to follow this career because of my interest in the technical side of photography. However, because I'm focused on showing facts, there's no room for experimentation with images. A clear eye is always required and that's a big challenge because this job can be very tough on a personal level. For my peace of mind, I must be as detached as possible from what I **witness**. At times, though, it's essential to talk about the emotional **impact** this work can have and all the photographers on our team are encouraged to talk to a psychologist every three months.

E Forensic photography is a specialist field, and there are only a small number of opportunities made available each year. Anyone who's interested in forensics must have had previous experience as a police officer. I'm pleased to have learnt so much more about photography in this job. If you can stay calm and focused while dealing with the **unpredictable**, then this could be a job to consider. You never get bored. Only don't expect it to be like CSI every day!

b) What style is the text written in? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

5 Answer the questions in your own words. Base your answers on the information in the text.

- Why does Robert consider his job as "a way to show the truth"?
- How can this job affect a person emotionally?
- What qualities should someone have to do this job?

6 a) Find words in the text whose antonyms are:

- not exact (para C)
- easy (para D)
- underneath (para C)
- uneasy (para E)

b) Explain the highlighted words in Polish.



Imagine you are Robert Mars and your partner is interviewing you. Use the information in the text to act out your interview.



Imagine you are a forensic photographer for a day. Describe your day and your feelings. Does this job match your personality? Why/Why not? In three minutes write a few sentences. Tell the class.

5b

Vocabulary

Vocabulary from the text

1 Choose the correct word.

- 1 There were a lot of people at the **scene/sight** of the robbery.
- 2 Forensic photographers deal with various crime **situations/cases**.
- 3 The police managed to catch the thieves and **regain/recover** the **stolen/robbed** jewellery.
- 4 Two people were **wounded/hurt** in a car **disaster/accident**.
- 5 Can I please speak to the officer in **charge/duty**?
- 6 There was not enough **evidence/indication** to prosecute him.
- 7 The criminal tried to **discard/reject** the murder weapon by throwing it in the river.
- 8 His job has a strong emotional **effect/impact** on him.

2 Choose the correct preposition.

- 1 The article deals **with/towards** the use of photographs as evidence **in/for** a court.
- 2 The officer **in/on** duty briefed them **on/in** the crime.
- 3 You need to focus **at/on** detail.
- 4 If you are interested **for/in** the case, contact Mr Lewis.

3 Replace the underlined words with: **proof, on call, key, victim, stand, witness to**.

- 1 He was the only person who saw the accident.
- 2 She provided evidence that helped them locate the criminal.
- 3 The criminals will be brought to court to have a trial.
- 4 Police officers are available 24 hours a day every week.
- 5 They found the kidnapped girl tied to a chair.
- 6 That man is the most important witness in the case.

Topic vocabulary
Crime & Punishment

4 a) Complete the text with appropriate words. Then, choose the correct item.

Watch out!



The number of burglaries has increased in and around the town centre recently. For this 1), Westville Police are 2) **inquiring/warning** people to watch out for suspicious-looking people in their building or neighbourhood. Police say it only takes a few easy 3) **points/precautions** to ensure you don't become the 4) **victim/case** of a break-in, especially when you are away.

- 5) **Make/Let** it difficult for the burglar! Make 6) that all doors and windows are locked and remove all keys from their normal 'hiding place'.
- Buy a good lock and 7) **install/lay** it a third of the way up the door.
- If you are going away, 8) **ask/order** a neighbour to collect your post—a pile of mail on your front step says, 'Burglar, I'm away. Please come in!' Cancel all newspaper deliveries, and cut your grass before you leave.
- Make sure all garages and sheds are locked—buildings like these are the first place a burglar will go to find a(n) 9) **tool/equipment** to break into your house.
- Get an alarm! Most burglars will be 10) **deterred/postponed** by the noise it 11) when they set it off. Test it and ensure that it meets British quality standards.

If you see someone trying to break into a house, 12) **report/refer** the incident to the police immediately. If you have any information about anyone 13) **evolved/involved** in a crime,

call CRIMESTOPPERS on 0800 666 222.

b) Use the text to tell your partner how to be safe or write an email to your English friend on the topic.

5 a) Complete the table. Check in your dictionaries.

Crime	Criminal	Verb
1)	kidnapper	2)
shoplifting	3)	shoplift/steal from a shop
pickpocketing	4)	pick (sb's pocket)/steal sb's wallet/purse
5)	burglar	burgle (sb's house)
mugging	6)	mug sb
robbery	7)	rob (a bank)
theft	thief	thieve/steal sth

b) Give definitions for the criminals in the table. What are these words in your language?

A burglar is someone who burgles someone's home.

6 Fill in: *attempting, verdict, escape, court, innocent, break into, caught, found guilty, crime, sentence, weapon, get away with, accused.*

- A: Silence in the 1) ! You have been 2) of the 3) of murder and I hereby 4) you to life in prison.
- B: My client is 5) , Your Honour! This is an unfair 6) !
- A: Put your 7) on the ground very slowly! There's no point 8) to 9) , we've got the place surrounded. How did you ever think you'd 10) it?
- B: You may have 11) me this time, but I'll be back!
- A: Ms Danes, is the 12) standing in front of you, the man you saw?
- B: Yes, sir, he is. I was looking out of my window and I saw him 13) the corner shop across the road.

7 Choose the correct word.

- 1 The police put barriers around the crime *spot/ place/scene* to keep everyone back.
- 2 We should never *break/violate/tear* the law.
- 3 Illegal parking is a minor *offence/fault/mistake*.
- 4 They decided not to *put/press/give* charges and gave him a *warning/notice/bill* instead.
- 5 There was a(n) *gun/armed/weapon* robbery yesterday.

8 Fill in: *committed, go, took, reached, spend, paid.*

- 1 Mr Hams the blame for the crime.
- 2 The smugglers are due to on trial.
- 3 He a fine for speeding.
- 4 He had to time in prison for bribery.
- 5 The person who the crime was sent to prison.
- 6 The jury a verdict and found the accused innocent.

9 Fill in with: *accused, evidence, convicted, breaking, sentenced, arrested, guilty, suspected.*

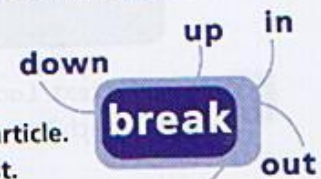
The police had 1) James Smith for weeks and when they finally gathered some real 2) against him, they 3) him for 4) into houses. A few weeks later he was 5) of the crime. The jury was convinced that he was 6) of the robberies, so he was 7) of the crime and 8) to ten years in prison.

Prepositional phrases

10 Fill in: *before, in, of, with, to, under.* Check in the Word List.

- 1 Laura was charged shoplifting.
- 2 She appeared court yesterday.
- 3 The accused were brought the judge.
- 4 They accused her identity theft.
- 5 He was taken to the station handcuffs.
- 6 He was sentenced two years in prison.
- 7 The criminal was placed arrest.

Phrasal verbs:
BREAK



11 Choose the correct particle. Check in the Word List.

- 1 She broke **in/down** when she **into** heard the bad news. (**collapsed**)
- 2 The burglars broke **in/into** the house by smashing a window. (**entered by force**)
- 3 The fire broke **up/out** so suddenly that the whole building was destroyed within minutes. (**began**)
- 4 The thieves broke **out/up** without being seen. (**escaped**)

Word formation (prefixes to express opposite meanings)

12 Read the theory, then use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the gap.

We can use these prefixes to express opposite meaning: **de-** (*forest-deforest*), **dis-** (*appear-disappear*), **in-** (*complete-incomplete*), **il-** (*before l*) (*logical-illogical*), **im-** (*before b, m, p*) (*polite-impolite*), **ir-** (*before r*) (*rational-irrational*), **un-** (*lucky-unlucky*)

- 1 Despite his to run fast, he is a great footballer. (**ABILITY**)
- 2 He is rather and lazy. (**COMPETENT**)
- 3 I'm afraid these clothes are quite for hiking. (**PRACTICAL**)
- 4 The description he gave was ; we need a correct one. (**ACCURATE**)
- 5 They found the woman lying on the floor. (**CONSCIOUS**)
- 6 I'm afraid the answer is to the question. (**RELEVANT**)
- 7 Hunting endangered animals is (**LEGAL**)

5c

Grammar in use

The passive



BEING A WITNESS IN COURT

When you are called into the courtroom, you will be led to the witness box and asked to swear an oath that you will tell the truth. Lying under oath is a serious offence for which you can be fined or put in prison. You will be asked questions by a lawyer for the side that called you, then by a lawyer from the other side. Sometimes you may be asked questions by the judge as well.

see pp. 157 (GR8) - 158 (GR9)

1 Read the text. Look at the passive forms in bold. What tense is each?

2 a) Read the sentences below. How does a passive sentence differ from an active sentence? Is it the same in Polish?

Changing from the active into the passive

ACTIVE	Subject	Verb	Object
	James	installed	a smoke alarm yesterday.
	↓ ↓ ↓		
PASSIVE	Subject	Verb	Agent
	A smoke alarm	was installed	by James yesterday.

We use the passive when the action itself is more important than the person who does it.

see p. 157 (GR8)

b) Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The object of the active sentence becomes the **agent/subject** in the passive sentence.
- The active verb remains in the same **tense/person** but changes into a passive form.
- The subject of the active sentence becomes the **object/agent**.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the passive voice.

- They asked him to present his evidence in court.
He was asked to present his evidence in court.
- They haven't solved the case yet.
- He is going to make an announcement later.
- Someone slashed the tyres of the van.
- He is typing the report now.
- They will check her emails to see if they can find something.
- Someone had smashed the windows before we got there.
- You must report the burglary immediately.

4 Use *with* or *by* to complete the following sentences.

with/by

with + instrument/material/ingredient - *The window was cut with a special tool.*

by + agent - *Tim's house was burgled by a professional.*

see p. 157 (GR8)

- My mother's handbag was stolen a thief.
- His home is fitted lights that come on when someone comes near the house.
- The safe was broken into a very high-tech tool.
- The robbers were caught detectives.
- The woman was rescued from the fire firefighters.

5 In pairs, expand these headlines into full sentences using the correct *passive* tense.

1 POLICE TO PATROL HIGH STREET FROM MIDNIGHT TO 4 AM

2 WOMAN ACCUSED OF BURGLARY

3 NEW LAW ORDERS ALL OFFICE BUILDINGS BE FITTED WITH SMOKE DETECTORS

4 TEEN VOLUNTEERS CLEAN GRAFFITI FROM PARK GATES

5 400 TOURISTS MUGGED IN TOWN CENTRE EVERY SUMMER

6 Rewrite the article using the passive.

A 20-year-old student broke into Mr Smith's house last Wednesday. He stole £1,000 and two rings. He escaped without anyone seeing him. The police arrested him two hours later. They charged him with burglary. A jury will try him next week. They might send him to prison for up to ten years. How did the police find him? Well, he checked his Facebook account using the Smith's computer, but he forgot to log out before he left.

Causative form



- 1 Ben is installing a burglar alarm.
- 2 Peter is having a burglar alarm installed.

We use *have* + object/thing + past participle to say that we arrange for someone to do something for us.

see p. 158 (GR9)

7 Read the sentences. Which one suggests that someone else does something for us?

8 Change the sentences into the causative form.

- 1 I am going to install a security camera.
- 2 Mary's neighbour collects her post and newspapers from her house whenever she's away.
- 3 An expert will take fingerprints from the crime scene for the detective.
- 4 Bodyguards protect the president's family for him.
- 5 A pickpocket has stolen my wallet.

Clauses of result

They left the door unlocked. **As a result, Therefore, Consequently/As a consequence,** thieves broke in and stole all their money.

It was **such** a big explosion **that** five people got seriously injured.

Everything happened **so fast that** they couldn't react.

see p. 158 (GR9)

9 Read the examples. Which words introduce clauses of result?

10 Complete the gaps with *so* or *such*. Check in the Grammar Reference.

- 1 The burglar was quiet that no one heard him break into the house.
- 2 There is a lot of graffiti in this city that the mayor has organised a clean-up day.
- 3 There have been many muggings in the area that police have been ordered to increase their patrols.
- 4 It was a shock finding that my car had been stolen that I cried.
- 5 The thief was running fast that the officers couldn't catch her.

11 Join the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 Students have fire drills twice a month. They are better prepared in case of a fire. (**As a result**)
- 2 Guards have been hired to watch out for shoplifters. Fewer products are stolen. (**As a result**)
- 3 Lots of bins have been put in the park. There is far less litter. (**Therefore**)
- 4 He broke the law. He was sent to prison. (**Consequently**)

Key word transformations

12 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it means the same as the first. Use two to five words.

- 1 Jenny had a security system installed in her home yesterday. **WAS**
A security system yesterday.
- 2 The police took the robbers to the station. **TAKEN**
The robbers by the police.
- 3 They have fitted a burglar alarm at Jane's house. **HAD**
Jane at her house.
- 4 Mrs Robinson will insure her valuables for £2 million. **HAVE**
Mrs Robinson
..... for £2 million.
- 5 Burglars broke into our offices while we were away. **BROKEN**
Our offices
while we were away.

13 Think of the grammar structures you have learnt in this lesson. Write sentences using them. Tell the class or your partner.

5d

Listening skills

1 a) Which of the emergency services: *fire brigade, police, ambulance*, would you call if

- a there was a car crash?
- b a fire broke out in your house?
- c a burglar broke into your house?

b) What number do you call in your country when you need the emergency services? In what circumstances would you call them?

2 a) Listen to a telephone conversation. Which of the expressions (1-8) do you hear? What emergency is the caller reporting?

- 1 Which service do you require, sir?
- 2 Please hurry!
- 3 Please state the nature of the emergency.
- 4 A patrol car has been sent to investigate, sir.
- 5 Firefighters are on the way.
- 6 Thank you for all your assistance.
- 7 Please state your name and your address clearly.
- 8 Emergency services.

b) Is the dialogue *formal* or *informal*? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

3 Listen again and complete the sentences. Use up to three words.

- 1 Bob wants to talk to
- 2 The fire is in Bob's
- 3 Bob lives at
- 4 Bob is asked if anyone is
- 5 Bob is told to

4 Work in pairs. You have witnessed a break-in. Use the phrases in Ex. 2, as well as your own ideas, to report it to the emergency services.

5 a) You will hear a news reporter talking to a radio show presenter about a fire in a local warehouse. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

- *blaze* • *docklands* • *extinguish*
- *flammable materials* • *formal statement*
- *police custody* • *motive*
- *prior convictions* • *financial difficulties*
- *allegedly* • *insurance consultant*

b) Listen and for questions 1-6 choose the correct answer A, B or C.



- 1 The fire service
 - A was called out last night.
 - B managed to put out a large fire.
 - C went to a fire in the town centre.
- 2 The fire was first thought to be accidental because
 - A easily ignited items were stored there.
 - B more than one warehouse was damaged.
 - C it started in a run-down warehouse.
- 3 The police announced that
 - A the fire was started deliberately.
 - B they have arrested a suspect.
 - C they haven't stated anything formally.
- 4 What is true of Mr Sanders?
 - A His business is in debt.
 - B He runs a successful business.
 - C He had no motive to start the fire.
- 5 The reporter suggests that the reason for arson could be
 - A to save his business
 - B to redeem insurance coverage
 - C to destroy surrounding warehouses
- 6 The reporter will talk to the presenter again
 - A during the next news report.
 - B if the investigation finds anything.
 - C when Mr Sanders is charged.

Intonation in echo questions

6 Listen and repeat. Mind the intonation.

- 1 A: Police now suspect arson to be the cause.
B: The police suspect what?
- 2 A: The warehouse owner was taken into police custody.
B: Taken where?
- 3 A: He was having some financial difficulties.
B: He was having what?
- 4 A: He could be reimbursed as much as a quarter of a million pounds.
B: How much?

Speaking skills 5e

Advice/Concern

- 1** Read the first exchange. What is Harold's problem? What is Lucy's advice?
 Listen and read to find out.

A: Hi, Harold? What's the matter?
 B: Oh! Hi, Lucy. I've had a bad morning. My locker was broken into.
 A: That's terrible. Is anything missing?
 B: No, but whoever did it also smashed some eggs over my books. What should I do?
 A: I think you should report it to the headteacher immediately.
 B: I'm not sure about that. What if that makes the situation worse in the future?
 A: If I were you, I'd definitely report it. If things get worse in the future, then you will be protected by the school. Imagine you say nothing now and the situation still gets worse. You'd be told that you should have spoken up sooner.
 B: I think you're right. I'll talk to the headteacher.
 A: Why don't you let me come with you? We'll tell him together.
 B: That's a good idea. Thanks, Lucy.
 A: No problem. Let's go then.

- 2** Take roles and read the dialogue aloud.

Expressing concern	Stating a problem
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What's wrong? • What's the matter? • You don't look well. Are you OK? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • My purse/phone was stolen from my bag. • Someone ... to my ... • Whoever did it also ...

Asking for advice	Giving advice	Responding to advice
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What should/ can I do? • I don't know what to do. • Should I ... ? • Could you help me? • What am I supposed to do? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I think you should ... • Have you thought of ... • If I were you, I'd ... • Why don't you ... ? • It might be a good idea to 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I think you're right. • That's a good idea. • I'm not sure about that. • Yes, maybe you're right. • That's not a bad idea.

- 3** Work in pairs. A classmate of yours has taken your purse from your bag in the school canteen. Ask your friend for advice. Use phrases from the language tables and the dialogue in Ex. 1 to help.

Comparing & Contrasting pictures

- 4** Fill in the gaps. Listen and check.

Compare the two photographs and say how important you think each of these jobs is.



The first picture shows a police officer in the street. He is 1) his uniform and a police helmet. I can see a radio attached to his jacket, too. I believe he is patrolling the streets. The 2) picture shows a judge in a courtroom. He is 3) in a shirt and tie and he is wearing a black robe. 4) pictures show people who work in the legal system. However, the police officer is in a position to enforce the law 5) a judge works to interpret the law. Police officers are very important 6) they keep criminals off the streets and protect people. A judge is just 7) important as a police officer because a judge makes sure that justice is done. A judge protects the rights of victims and defendants in a court of law. Both police officers and judges have a great deal of responsibility in society.

- 5** Compare and contrast the pictures and say how important you think each of the jobs is. Use the language table and Ex. 4 to help you.



Useful Language

- The first/second picture shows ...
- ... is wearing / dressed in ...
- I can see ... works in the street/in an office/in a courtroom / ... protect sb/sb's rights
- ... has a great deal of responsibility/authority etc

Comparing ideas	Speculating	Contrasting ideas
Both ... and	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I think/suppose/ believe ... • I'd say (that) ... 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In contrast, ... • ... while/whereas • Although, ...

5f Writing A report

▶ Writing Bank 5 p. 146 (WB5)

Rubric analysis

1 Read the rubric, underline the key words, then answer the questions.

You belong to an environmental club. You have recently been to a talk given by a police officer on the topic of how to make your neighbourhood a safer place to live. Now write a report for the president of the club suggesting ways of doing this. Justify your suggestions with reasons/examples (120-180 words).

- 1 What is your report about?
- 2 Who is going to read it?
- 3 What should you include?
- 4 What style should you write it in?

Model analysis

2 Read the model and fill in the blanks (1-5) with the correct heading (A-E).


1 The purpose of this report is to suggest three ways that we can make our neighbourhood safer for its residents.

2 One possibility is to participate in neighbourhood watch schemes. Residents would take turns to carry out inspections in the area and report anything suspicious to the police. As a result, burglars and car thieves would be deterred.

3 Another idea is to introduce volunteer programmes aimed at escorting vulnerable citizens. For example, the elderly and the disabled are especially open to attack when outside their homes. Many would welcome the assistance of a companion when they are mobile.

4 It could also be helpful to organise criminality awareness campaigns. For instance, leaflets advising on safety in the home, on the streets and when using public transport could be distributed. This would help citizens to be better informed and therefore more prepared to deal with crime.

5 To sum up, there are a number of ways that our neighbourhood can be made safer. I believe that if the above suggestions are adopted, security in local communities will be vastly improved.

- NEIGHBORHOOD CRIME WATCH**
- 
- A PROTECT HIGH RISK GROUPS
 - B CONCLUSION
 - C PROVIDE INFORMATION
 - D INTRODUCTION
 - E SHARE PATROL DUTIES

3 a) Complete the sentences using the appropriate linkers from the list.

- in this way • since • therefore • due to
- and • however • in addition • instead
- such as

- 1 School bullying can be reduced if schools regularly hand out questionnaires to teachers and students., they can learn how widespread the problem is how to deal with it.
- 2 One possible way of dealing with inner city crime is to introduce more green spaces. Young people will have more space for recreational activities sports., green areas may have a calming effect on their aggression.
- 3 A prison sentence is not appropriate for juvenile criminals., young criminals could be asked to repair or clean up the damage they cause.
- 4 CCTV cameras are a useful means of detecting crime in public areas., some people see them as an infringement of their privacy.
- 5 Home burglaries are increasing lack of proper policing., the authorities should introduce extra foot patrols in residential areas.
- 6 Employing a store detective is a good solution to the problem of shoplifting they can instantly apprehend the shoplifter.

b) Match the extracts to the headings. One heading is extra.

1 In order to make public transport safer, bus and train companies could increase the number of security staff. In particular, specially trained officers could monitor the late night services. As well as reducing the risks to passengers, it would give them greater peace of mind.

2 One approach to the problem of prison overcrowding is to give more community based sentences. This would create more room in prisons, save the government money and benefit the local community by improving the area.

- A DOING A FORM OF USEFUL WORK
- B PROVIDING SHELTER
- C EMPLOY EXTRA PERSONNEL

Formal style

4 Replace the words/phrases in bold with more suitable formal words/phrases from the lists.

A • tackle • the aim of this report is

1) I've written this report to suggest ways we can 2) get to grips with the problem of littering in our town.

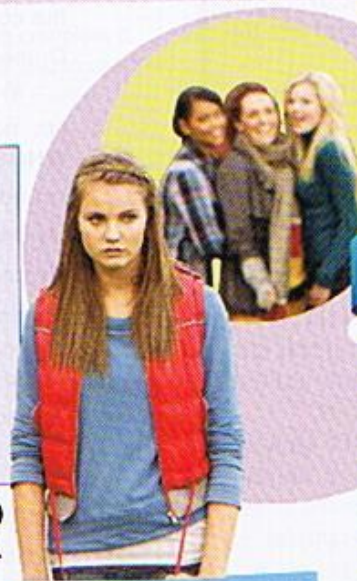
B • be effective • of great benefit to • all in all • I firmly believe

1) To cut a long story short, creating job training schemes and organised youth activity programmes will be 2) a big plus for young people. 3) I bet that following these recommendations will 4) work wonders in reducing gang violence.

Your turn

5 a) Read the rubric.

You have attended a talk given by a police officer about making schools a safer place. Now your teacher has asked you to write a report on the topic suggesting ways of doing this. Write your report, including supporting points and your recommendation (120-180 words).



b) Match the suggestions (1-3) to the supporting points (A-C).

Suggestions

Reasons/Examples/Results

- 1 Step up security.
- 2 Set up telephone help lines.
- 3 Organise school safety talks.

- A** Students can speak to someone in confidence. They will receive advice, e.g. about what to do if they are being bullied.
- B** Experts can explain how to deal with aggression and bullying. This way students can be prepared if they are in a threatening situation.
- C** Guard entry points and patrol school grounds regularly. This will help keep unauthorised visitors out.

c) Use language from the Useful Language box to join the ideas in Ex. 5b.

6 a) List the suggestions and supporting points under the headings: **EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION - AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION - CREATE A SUPPORTIVE ENVIRONMENT.**

b) Write your report. Follow the plan.

Useful Language

Introduction

- The purpose/aim of this report is to ...
- This report contains ... on ...

Suggestions

- One possibility is to ... • We could ...
- It would be a good idea if ...
- A further consideration would be to ...

Supporting points

Reasons

- because • as • since • due to

Examples

- for example/instance • such as • like

Results

- In this way, • As a result, • Therefore

Recommendation

- I would (not) recommend ...
- I suggest that ...
- I believe/think (that) ...

Conclusion

- To sum up, • On the whole,
- All in all, • In conclusion,

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *state purpose and content of the report*

Main Body

(Paras 2-4) *present your suggestions and supporting points in separate paragraphs under appropriate headings*

Conclusion

(Para 5) *summarise suggestions/ make a general assessment & give recommendation*



Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for:

- appropriate introduction of the topic (stating purpose and content clearly).
- use of subheadings to introduce each part of the report.
- appropriate formal style.
- appropriate use of linkers.
- spelling/grammar mistakes.
- correct word length.
- appropriate conclusion (including your recommendation).

- 1 For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C, D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0). What is the author's intention?

The Role of CCTV Cameras in Our Lives

Crime, whether petty theft or something of a more 0) *B* nature, has been a 1) of UK society for as long as anybody can remember. In the past, it was the job of detectives such as Sherlock Holmes to 2) criminals to justice, which would actually take a considerable 3) of work and time. However, all that has now changed with the advent of CCTV cameras.

Concealed at various city centre locations, CCTV cameras

4) suspicious behaviour and send information back to a central office. The footage is then 5) in the office archives and forwarded to the police, should they be looking 6) a crime that may have been 7) on camera. This sort of material is invaluable to the police, as cameras can zoom in closely on criminal activity and this can then be used as 8) in court.

Generally, it is accepted that CCTV cameras exist as a 9) of protecting people, but that has not 10) them from coming under fierce criticism. Many see the cameras as an invasion of their privacy, and are not comfortable with the idea of what is sometimes described as being 11) by "Big Brother." Nevertheless, more cameras are being installed every day in the UK and so it appears that, whether we like it or not, CCTV is here to 12)



- 0 A strict B serious C stern D stiff
 1 A feature B type C nature D character
 2 A take B fetch C get D bring
 3 A lot B load C amount D total
 4 A check B monitor C look D view
 5 A filled B stacked C packed D stored
 6 A into B forward C up D after
 7 A locked B arrested C caught D taken
 8 A evidence B clue C witness D defence
 9 A ways B means C type D use
 10 A restricted B avoided C blocked D prevented
 11 A stared B noticed C looked D watched
 12 A remain B stay C live D be

- 2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

0 Lisa regretted leaving the door unlocked. **WISHED**

Lisa *wished she had locked* the door.

- 1 With a proper security system, the burglary could have been prevented. **THERE**
 The burglary could have been prevented a proper security system.
- 2 Crime rates are higher in large towns than in the country. **HIGH**
 Crime rates in the country as they are in large towns.
- 3 I'm not sure who that wallet belongs to. **WHOSE**
 I'm not sure is.
- 4 My uncle once worked as a policeman. **JOB**
 My uncle used as a policeman.
- 5 According to the witness, the driver of the stolen car was a young woman. **BEING**
 According to the witness, the stolen car a young woman.
- 6 The firemen found it difficult to control the fire with such a strong wind blowing. **UNDER**
 The firemen found it difficult to with such a strong wind blowing.
- 7 He can't have been telling the truth about where he was on Sunday night. **MUST**
 He about where he was on Sunday night.
- 8 The police recommend leaving a light on when away. **ADVISABLE**
 The police say it's a light on when away.

- 3 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 1 The judge said the evidence was and dismissed the case. **RELY**
- 2 A forensic photographer must pay great to detail. **ATTEND**
- 3 The stolen painting is thought to be extremely **VALUE**
- 4 The of DNA testing has changed the nature of police investigation. **INTRODUCE**
- 5 Tanya was arrested for driving. **RESPONSIBLE**

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- 1 I was made for hours before I had my leg examined at the emergency room.
A wait B to wait C waiting D to have waited
- 2 There weren't any new members at the club, I can remember.
A as far as B as long as C as much as D as well as
- 3 "We by Leo's announcement to leave the company."
"I know! I was left speechless."
A surprised ourselves B had surprised C were surprised D found surprise
- 4 My mother worked part-time we were growing up.
A just B after C before D when
- 5 "Did you hear that Nick had his car into last night?"
"Oh no! That's terrible!"
A breaking B broken C broke D break
- 6 "My parents are really keen on my studying law."
"Oh really? I thought you were in pursuing an acting career?"
A interesting B interest C interested D interestingly
- 7 "Could I talk to Peter, please?"
"Well, I'd rather you him while he's sleeping."
A didn't disturb B don't disturb C weren't disturbing D hadn't disturbed
- 8 "You really must finish your chores before you go out this afternoon."
"I know. I'm nearly done."
A to be doing B to do C doing D to have done
- 9 "Have you finished typing up that report?"
No. Sorry, but I'm not capable typing any faster.
A of B for C with D at
- 10 Jenny the keyboard since she was 5.
A is playing B has been playing C plays D was playing

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Passengers are kindly requested to the plane.
A go up B ascend C board D get up
- 2 Our company plans to open seven new across the country in the next few months.
A categories B divisions C wings D branches
- 3 After being struck by the tornado, farmers have to the government for help.
A appealed B addressed C submitted D proposed
- 4 The study that children's behaviour is influenced by television.
A consented B concluded C concerned D complained
- 5 You can't walk through that field. It's property.
A personal B exclusive C private D reserved
- 6 Unless you have extensive experience it's difficult to a business.
A work B act C make D run
- 7 The of the experiment is to find better ways of treating infection.
A result B direction C necessity D purpose
- 8 I was when my exams were over.
A relieved B pleasant C eased D calmed
- 9 Helen was upset because she'd had a with her sister.
A fuss B complaint C battle D quarrel
- 10 I was so with the noise and pollution in the city that I moved to the countryside.
A put up B taken up C fed up D taken back
- 11 Julie herself badly when she slipped on the icy pavement.
A damaged B wounded C harmed D hurt
- 12 Having access to a clean water supply is important for everyone in the village.
A considerably B totally C vitally D completely
- 13 He is a very person and makes friends easily.
A outspoken B outright C outlying D outgoing

Language Focus 5

1 Use the words in their correct form to complete the gaps.

• *clue* • *evidence* • *hint* • *trace*

- The prisoner escaped and there has been no of him since.
- There is to suggest that a bank employee helped commit the robbery.
- I can't remember the answer to the question; could you give me a ?
- The detective examined the crime scene looking for to solve the murder.

• *remove* • *delete* • *confiscate* • *dismiss*

- This email is highly confidential so it after your read it.
- Due to a lack of evidence, the judge the case and the woman was freed.
- It took them four hours to the graffiti from the school wall.
- The teacher Bob's mobile phone after he was caught texting in class.

• *focus* • *concentrate* • *aim* • *direct*

- The mayor to lower crime in the city by 50% next year.
- The judge told the young offender to on his studies and not shoplift again.
- Police are on the north of the city in an effort to catch the bank robber.
- After making sure the cyclist was unhurt, the police officer his attention to catching the speeding driver.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

2 Choose the correct item.

- They were accused **off/for** vandalism.
- He was charged **with/of** speeding.
- He was sentenced **to/for** two years in prison.
- The shoplifter was placed **on/under** arrest.
- The police have the burglar **under/in** custody.
- The burglar broke **in/out** through the window.
- The prisoners tried to break **up/out** of the prison.
- The police broke **in/down** the door and caught the criminals.
- The thief was caught trying to break **into/in** the safe.

Word formation

3 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in bold.

Police have appealed for witnesses after large rocks were dropped onto 1) (**number**) cars passing under a bridge in Scotland this week. None of the 2) (**occupy**) were injured but police warn that this type of mindless 3) (**vandal**) is extremely 4) (**danger**) and could have serious consequences and cause many 5) (**fatal**). "When the vision of a driver is compromised, the lives of everyone on the road are put in danger," said a police 6) (**inspect**).

4 Use these prefixes to form antonyms: *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *un-*.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 capable ≠ | 7 regular ≠ |
| 2 able ≠ | 8 honest ≠ |
| 3 logical ≠ | 9 justice ≠ |
| 4 mortal ≠ | 10 legal ≠ |
| 5 responsible ≠ | 11 activate ≠ |
| 6 predictable ≠ | 12 perfect ≠ |
| | 13 relevant ≠ |
| | 14 successful ≠ |

Grammar in Focus

Choose the correct item. Then complete the gaps with the correct word.

Two crimes 1) **were committed/are committed** in San Francisco yesterday 2) an unnamed man who failed 3) both attempts. He walked into a Bank of America branch with a 4) to rob it and wrote a demand for money on the back of a bank deposit slip. He was so worried that he 5) **was seen/had been seen** writing the note by someone that he panicked and walked out. He then went to the Wells Fargo Bank 6) was across the street to try his luck there. He handed the note 7) the clerk who told him she couldn't possibly accept his stick-up note because he 8) written on a Bank of America deposit slip. She added he would either have to fill out a Wells Fargo deposit slip 9) go back to the Bank of America. Defeated, he left. The cashier called the police who 10) **found/was found** the crook standing in the queue 11) the Bank of America. He 12) **is arrested/was arrested** and taken to the police station.

5

Progress
Check

Reading

- 1 a) Read the text and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for questions 1-6.



Sherlock Holmes

Sherlock Holmes is a fictional detective created by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. He appeared in print from 1880-1927 but he is still a popular character today. He was the hero of 56 short stories and four novels in which he used his intelligence, his powers of observation and deduction, as well as a certain amount of forensic science to solve mysteries and crimes.

In fact, it could be said that Sherlock Holmes was, in a way, one of the very first forensic scientists. He had an outstanding ability to look at a seemingly insignificant piece of evidence and draw a number of conclusions from it. He also had an encyclopaedic knowledge on a huge variety of topics some of which seemed ridiculously trivial. For example, he could identify 140 different types of cigar based on the ash in an ashtray.

Holmes placed great importance on trace evidence such as tyre tracks and shoe impressions. He often used a magnifying glass at the scene of a crime and a microscope for further analysis. Many of his evidence gathering techniques are common knowledge now, but were practically unheard of at the time his stories were written, for example, handwriting analysis, fingerprinting and ballistics.

When investigating a crime, he would accumulate all the information and evidence possible. Then he would formulate a theory about the crime and then test that theory. He would seek evidence and information to support his theory and then capture the criminal. His basic principle was, 'when you eliminate the impossible, whatever remains, however improbable, must be the truth.'

Testing his theories sometimes involved going undercover to obtain information. Holmes was a master of disguise and could even fool his good friend and right-hand man Dr Watson.

An indication of how popular Sherlock Holmes remains today is the fact that there are over 200 films about him. He is the most portrayed film character ever.

- Conan Doyle is
 - a police detective.
 - a short story writer.
 - a fictional character.
 - a forensic scientist.
- Sherlock Holmes knew a lot about
 - gathering evidence.
 - early forensic scientists.
 - insignificant conclusions.
 - unimportant topics.
- At the time of his stories, police didn't know much about how to
 - use magnifying glasses.
 - analyse handwriting.
 - track evidence.
 - collect fingerprints.
- Holmes' method of crime solving worked because
 - he tested his theories to prove them right or wrong.
 - he disguised himself to collect evidence.
 - he dismissed improbabilities.
 - he only looked at forensic evidence.

- Holmes believed
 - in the impossible.
 - the improbable can be true.
 - he was always right.
 - the truth can be eliminated.

- Dr Watson
 - worked with Holmes.
 - was a fool.
 - often went undercover with Holmes.
 - was right-handed.

(6x2=12)

b) Answer the questions in your own words. Justify your answers.

- Why is Holmes a popular character?
- What makes Holmes a forensic scientist?

(2x2=4)

Speaking

- 2 Choose the correct response.

- A: What's wrong?
B: a You don't look well.
b My phone was stolen.
- A: What's the best way to deal with it?
B: a If I were you, I'd report it to the police.
b Someone sprayed graffiti on my car.
- A: Have you thought of speaking to him about it?
B: a I don't know what to do.
b Actually, I've tried that.
- A: The police arrested Mr Stevens yesterday.
B: a The police arrested him why?
b The police arrested him when?
- A: Should I just forget about what happened?
B: a Why don't you confront them about it?
b I think you're right.

(5x2=10)

Progress Check 5

Vocabulary

- 3** Fill in with: *crucial, detached, gather, warned, armed, victim, accused, sentence, verdict, offence.*
- 1 It took the jury over 12 hours to reach a
 - 2 Forensic photographers must try to remain from what they witness because it can have a huge emotional impact.
 - 3 Even the smallest detail could be in a murder investigation.
 - 4 A special forensics team will the evidence from the crime scene.
 - 5 The police people on public transport to be on the lookout for pickpockets.
 - 6 He was of car theft.
 - 7 When you become a of crime, you often feel helpless.
 - 8 As it was his first, the judge let him off with a warning.
 - 9 The criminal was given a prison by the court.
 - 10 The robbery was all over the news last night.

(10x2=20)

Grammar

- 4** Rewrite the sentences in the passive.
- 1 The police are chasing the burglar.
 - 2 The jury convicted the thief.
 - 3 Thieves had stolen the painting in broad daylight.
 - 4 He is serving his prison sentence in Scotland.
 - 5 They will report the murder to the police immediately.
 - 6 We must install a burglar alarm as soon as possible.
 - 7 The boys are going to clean the graffiti off the walls.
 - 8 They are organising a neighbourhood watch scheme.
 - 9 They have installed CCTV cameras in their shop.
 - 10 Someone had broken into the house and taken all the valuables.

(10x2=20)

Listening

- 5** Listen to a news report and complete the missing information.

The robbery took place outside a famous

1

It happened at **2**

The collection was stolen from a **3**

Duplicates of **4** are kept in New York.

The collection was to appear during London

5

Alexander Mc Queen's **6** were broken into in 2007. James Long's collection disappeared hours before it was to appear on the

7

James Long's collection was stolen from

8

(8x2=16)

Writing

- 6** Read the rubric, then write your report (120-180 words).

Your English class has just watched a documentary programme about CCTV cameras. Now your teacher has asked you to write a report suggesting ways in which CCTV can be useful to fight crime. Write your report, including suggestions, supporting points and your recommendation (120-180 words).

- homes • shops • public areas

(18 marks)

(Total=100)

Check your progress

- describe a day in the life of a forensic photographer
- talk about crime & criminals
- call emergency services
- state a problem; ask for/give advice; express concern
- compare & contrast pictures
- write a report

GOOD ✓ **VERY GOOD //** **EXCELLENT ///**

Technology

Module 6

MODULE OBJECTIVES

Vocabulary

- gadgets
- technology
- prepositions
- phrasal verbs: *be*
- word formation: verbs from adjectives

Reading

- missing sentences
- answer questions

Grammar

- conditionals
- types of conditionals
- clauses of purpose
- wishes

Listening

- a radio talk (true/false statements)
- a dialogue (multiple choice)
- intonation in question tags

Speaking

- request/offer help - complain
- comparing photographs

Writing

- a paragraph expressing opinion
- a for-and-against essay
- contrast (*although, even though, despite, in spite of*)

Language Focus

- phrasal verbs & prepositions
- word formation
- grammar in focus

Progress Check

Gadgets

1 a) Which of these gadgets have you got?



b) What do you use them for? Choose from the phrases.

- take pictures
- download music files
- upload photos
- play games
- surf online
- talk to friends
- send text messages
- watch films
- record videos
- listen to music
- check emails
- store files

I use my smartphone to send text messages and listen to music.

2 Fill in: *scroll, converts, control, display, communicate, plug*. Which gadget does each sentence describe?

- 1 It can with laptops or desktop computers. Some are WiFi capable.
- 2 It allows you to through your photo library very quickly as anything you touch responds immediately.
- 3 The new model allows you to games with voice commands.
- 4 When you type in your message, it it to speech.
- 5 You can set it to the time and date.
- 6 I need to charge it. Where can I in the charger?



Imagine you had to spend a day without any gadgets. What would it be like? Write a few sentences or tell the class.

6a Reading

1 Check these words in the Word List. What do you think the text is about?

- *crawl*
- *metal and circuits*
- *artificial intelligence*
- *physically interact*
- *learning abilities*
- *equipped*
- *motor*
- *generate*
- *toddler*
- *camera*
- *microphone*
- *record sounds*
- *surroundings*
- *patient care*
- *experiment*

2 Which of these sentences are true about the toddler robot? Decide in pairs. Read and check.

- 1 It can think for itself.
- 2 It is modelled on a baby human.
- 3 It works in hospitals.
- 4 It can't respond to the environment like a human.

Check these words

- *toddler* • *flesh* • *humanoid*
- *apply* • *physique* • *equipped*
- *generate* • *research* • *investigate*
- *stimuli* • *demonstrate*
- *workplace* • *residential care home*
- *assist* • *experiment* • *workload*

The Toddler Robot

A It is only one metre high. It looks and behaves like a human child of about three. It can crawl and sit up. It can even play the drums. **1** What is it? It's the iCub robot — the latest in artificial intelligence and technology! The humanoid iCub robot was created by scientists at the Italian Institute of Technology in Genoa, Italy, in order to understand how human children learn about the world around them. This is important because scientists believe that once they understand how human beings learn, they will be able to apply these principles to robots.

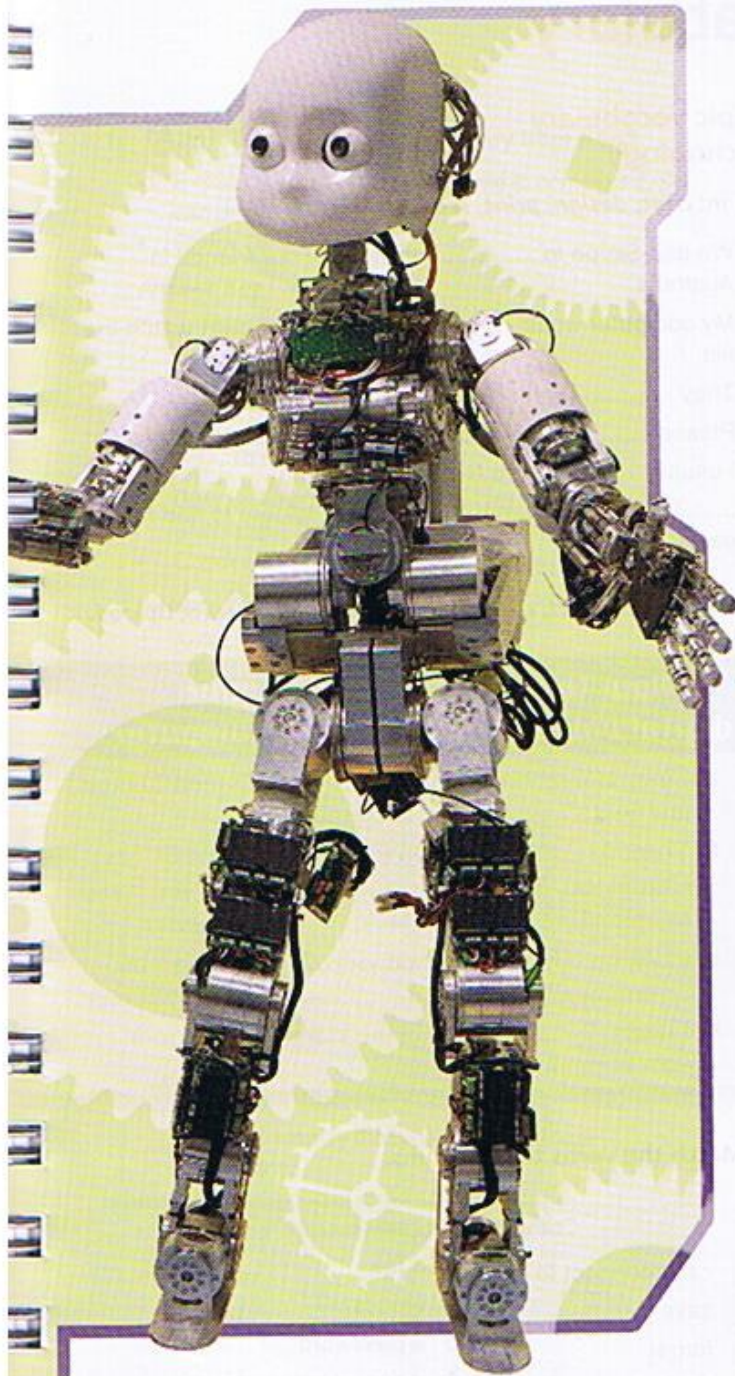
B How can a robot teach scientists about how humans learn? Well, many scientists believe that one way humans learn is by physically interacting with objects and other humans. **2** So, by building a robot with a physique that is as human as possible, scientists can study how our physical form helps us develop our learning abilities.

C **3** Well, it has a large number of motors in its body that generate movement in the head, arms, hands and legs. It has cameras for eyes and it listens with two tiny microphones on its head that record sounds. **4** This enables the iCub to crawl, walk and even pick up objects in its hand in a similar way to a toddler.

D On the outside, the iCub looks like a small child. However, a child will interact with interest to what it sees.

5 The iCub robot has only just managed to 'learn' how to control its eye movements based on external stimuli. That's a long way from being able to learn by interacting with its surroundings the way a child does.

E **6** If so, you could be in for a long wait! Nevertheless, the iCub — and robots like it — demonstrate that one day it should be possible to introduce 'thinking' robots into the workplace. Places such as hospitals and residential care homes could use these robots to assist with patient care. If the iCub experiment succeeds, many busy doctors and nurses will get a helping hand with their workload. Meanwhile, the iCub research team are patiently waiting and watching — much like normal parents — to see how their 'child' learns as it grows up!



3 Read the text and fill in the gaps 1-6 with a correct sentence A-H. Two sentences are extra.

- A How has the iCub robot been equipped to help scientists research this idea?
 B Also, it has been programmed with 53 different movements.

- C In short, they will be able to build robots that can actually think!
 D Would you believe such a future is likely to come about?
 E What's more, it will investigate it, then store what it has learnt.
 F It isn't made of flesh and blood, though; it's made of metal and circuits.
 G A baby, for instance, learns many things simply by touching, smelling or seeing objects around it.
 H Do you dream of a future where robots can think and make their own decisions?

What style is the text written in? Give reasons.

4 Listen and read the text. In your own words and based on ideas from the text, answer the questions.

- 1 Why have scientists modelled the iCub on a baby human?
- 2 How can 'thinking' robots be useful to us?

What is the author's intention?

5 Find words in the text which mean:

- act (para A) • most recent (para A)
- have a human shape and appearance (para A)
- rules (para A) • body structure (para B)
- advance (para B) • produce (para C)
- outside (para D)
- things which cause us to react (para D)
- communicate (para D) • show (para E)

What part of speech is each word?

6 Fill in: *residential, artificial, human, helping, research, pick up*. Use the completed phrases to write or say sentences about the iCub.

- | | | | |
|---------|-----------|---------|--------------|
| 1 | team | 4 | being |
| 2 | objects | 5 | hand |
| 3 | care home | 6 | intelligence |

7 ICT Collect more information about the iCub. Use the key word: iCub. Tell the class.



Make notes under the headings: *Name - Type - Description - Abilities - Future plans*. Use your notes to present the iCub to the class either in English or in Polish.



How do you feel about the development of a robot which could interact with people? In three minutes write a few sentences. Tell the class.

6b

Vocabulary

Vocabulary from the text

1 Fill in the correct word(s).

• **develop** • **grow up**

- 1 Babies learning skills by interacting with the environment.
- 2 Children who in big cities have more educational facilities.

• **investigate** • **research**

- 3 It took Sarah six months to her topic before she started to write her book.
- 4 "What's that strange smell coming from the kitchen?" "I'll go and!"

• **control** • **manage**

- 5 The joke the student told was so funny that the teacher couldn't her laughter.
- 6 Will scientists ever to find a cure for the common cold?

2 Choose the odd word out in the following sentences.

- 1 Andrew's father offered to help him **build/prepare/make** a robot for his school science project.
- 2 The presentation gave students a better idea how to **apply/follow/join** scientific principles when conducting their experiments.
- 3 Modern technology such as the Internet has made it easier for people to **interact/connect/combine** with one another.
- 4 It is said that children can **develop/improve/grow** their learning abilities by listening to classical music.
- 5 Tom's teacher told him to **research/probe/investigate** a topic for his essay.
- 6 My alarm is **programmed/set/formulated** to go off at 6:30 am every day.

Topic vocabulary
Technology3 Fill in: **chat, design, print, read, save, surf.**

- 1 We use Skype to online with our friends in Australia.
- 2 My computer won't the DVD, so I can't watch the film.
- 3 They websites for various companies.
- 4 Please the document and leave it on my desk.
- 5 I usually the Net in the evening.
- 6 your documents in different folders to find them easily.

4 Fill in: **click, connect, copied, disconnect, search, turn, upload.**

How to 1) ... videos from your digital video camera to your computer

- First, 2) on your digital video camera and 3) it to the computer.
- Then, 4) for your video files in 'My Computer'. 5) on the video you want to upload.
- Click on 'Upload selected video.' The video will automatically be 6) onto your computer.
- Finally, 7) the video camera from your computer.

5 a) Match the verbs to the nouns.

Computer problems

- | | | | |
|---|------------------|---|-------------------------|
| 1 | can't connect to | a | a file |
| 2 | save | b | emails |
| 3 | forget | c | a password |
| 4 | can't check | d | a document |
| 5 | can't install | e | the server/the Internet |
| 6 | upload | f | software |

b) In pairs, use the problems in Ex. 5a and the useful language to act out exchanges, as in the example.

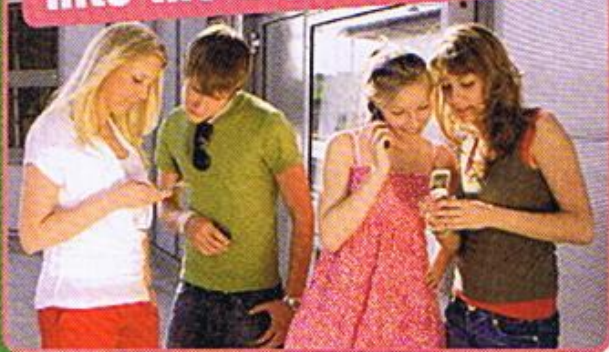
Asking about a problem	Offering help
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What's wrong? • What's the matter? • What's the problem? • What's up? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Let me have a look./Do you want me to have a look at it? • Can I help? • Perhaps I can help.

A: *What's wrong?*
 B: *I can't connect to the Internet.*
 A: *Let me have a look.*

6 Complete the text with the correct word in the list.

- *networking* • *processing* • *transfer*
- *employs* • *format* • *browser* • *files*
- *installing*

A new Smartphone hits the high street!



A new mobile phone was introduced yesterday which is expected to revolutionise the use of keyboards on mobile devices. Modern phones encourage communication through texting with SMS and on social **1** sites. However these phones are not actually very easy to type on! This new phone **2** innovative text-prediction software. The makers have also redesigned the keypad for effortless typing. Included with the phone is its own word **3** software which allows users to **4** text-including font, layout and spacing. You can even link wirelessly to your PC! This means you can **5** any document with a simple click. There is no need to access your Internet **6** to download a file from your web-mail. By **7** a simple application to your PC, the software can retrieve **8** from your phone automatically.

Prepositions

7 Choose the correct item. Check in the Word List.

- 1 He couldn't connect **to/on** the Internet.
- 2 A smartphone is a great way to keep **in/of** touch with friends.
- 3 Plug your MP3 player **into/onto** the computer to download the music files you want.
- 4 She removed the battery **from/at** the digital camera.
- 5 A strange message keeps appearing **in/on** my computer screen.

Phrasal verbs: be

8 Fill in the correct phrasal verb. Check in the Word List. Translate these phrasal verbs into Polish.



- 1 Do you know what time the programme about new technology is tonight? (**be shown on TV**)
- 2 I must be now – it's getting late. (**leave**)
- 3 Dan's been an iPod for ages so I think I'll get him one for his birthday. (**want**)
- 4 The printer's ink; can you buy some? (**have no more left**)
- 5 I knew I was a difficult day at work when the Internet crashed. (**expect sth bad**)
- 6 Jack had been for two weeks in the Bahamas and came back looking relaxed and tanned. (**be absent**)

Word formation (verbs from adjectives)

9 Read the rule, then form verbs from the adjectives to complete the sentences.

We use the prefix **en-** or the suffix **-en** to form verbs from adjectives to give the meaning 'make'. – *Make sure you **enable** the firewall on your computer. We had to **widen** the doorway to get the new equipment in the room.*

- 1 Digital photography makes it easy for people to their own pictures. (**LARGE**)
- 2 Computers have definitely the time it takes to do a lot of repetitive tasks. (**SHORT**)
- 3 One problem with using computers is that it can your eyesight. (**WEAK**)
- 4 Run your anti-virus program regularly to that your computer is kept virus-free. (**SURE**)
- 5 Many people who use the Internet say it has their horizons. (**BROAD**)
- 6 This office chair helps you your back when sitting in front of your computer. (**STRAIGHT**)

6c

Grammar in use

Conditionals

Dad, I'm going to Jimmy's.

It's 10 o'clock, Ben. You're late again!

Don't be late again. **If you aren't** back by 9:00, you'll **be** in trouble.

OK, Dad, I promise.

My watch stopped. **If it hadn't stopped**, I **would have been** on time.

Yes, Dad.

If you weren't always late, I **wouldn't** mind so much. You promised to be on time, didn't you?

When you break your promises, I **get** angry. And I promised to punish you ...

That's OK, Dad - I **won't get** angry if you **break** your promise, too!

▶ see pp. 158 (GR9) - 159 (GR10)

1 a) Read the joke. What tenses are used after *if*? Complete the table using sentences from the text.

Types of conditionals		
Type	Conditional clause	Main Clause
0	<i>If/When</i> + present simple <i>When you break your promises,</i>	present simple/imperative <i>I get angry.</i>
1	<i>If/When</i> + ...	will/won't (can/should/may/might/imperative) + bare infinitive
2	<i>If</i> + ...	would/wouldn't (could/might) + bare infinitive
3	<i>If</i> + ...	would/wouldn't + have + past participle

▶ see p. 158 (GR9)

b) Which type refers to: *an unlikely situation in the present? a real or probable situation in the present/future? an imaginary situation contrary to facts in the past? a general truth?* Are there similar structures in Polish?

2 Work in pairs. How do these sentences differ in meaning? Check in the Grammar Reference.

If he does this project well, he'll get promoted.
Unless he does this project well, he won't get promoted.
When he does this project well, he'll get promoted.

3 Complete the sentences. Which type of conditional is each one?

- When she finishes her project, she (email) it to her teacher.
- Unless you (be) careful, you'll lose your files.
- If you had been more careful, you (not/delete) the file.
- If you read the manual, you (know) how to save the file.
- If you had clicked on 'shut down', the computer (switch off).

4 Read Rob's thoughts, then rewrite the sentences using the second conditional.

- My laptop is very slow. I can't do my work fast.
- I don't have any friends. I feel lonely.
- I don't earn enough money to buy a tablet PC.
- I don't have enough time. I can't join a gym.
- I don't have the Internet, so I can't chat online.

If my laptop wasn't so slow, I could do my work faster.

5 Work in groups. What would you do if you ...

- were Prime Minister for a day?
- had a lot of money? • saw a mouse?
- got lost in the jungle? • failed your exams?

6 Continue the sentences.

- If I had known his phone number,
- If I had saved some money,
- If I had had a camera,

Clauses of purpose

- **(to)-infinitive** – He called to say he'd be late.
- **in order to, so as to (more formal)** – They are working overtime in order to meet their deadline.
- **so that** – I'll give you his number so that you can call him.
- **for + noun phrase** – He wrote the article for some extra money.
- **with a view to + -ing** – She got a degree in computer engineering with a view to becoming a programmer.

▶ see p. 159 (GR10)

7 Read the examples in the theory table. Then join the sentences, using the words in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.

- 1 He is surfing the Net. He wants to find a cheap flight. (**so as to**)
- 2 Mark is saving hard. He wants to buy a new laptop. (**so that**)
- 3 The company is talking with technicians now. They want to upgrade their computer system. (**with a view to**)
- 4 She withdrew her savings from the bank. She wants to buy a new PC. (**in order to**)
- 5 Emma called Lyn on her mobile. She wanted some advice. (**for**)

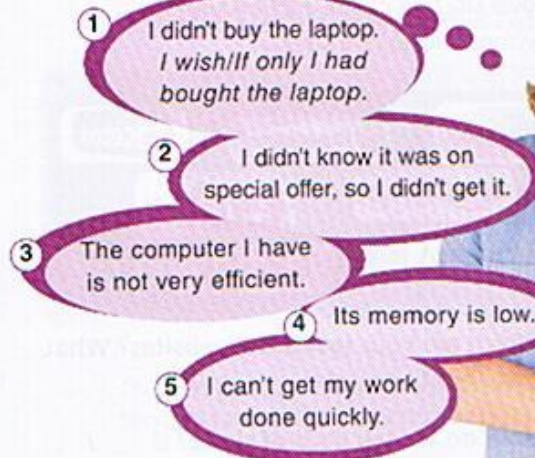
Wishes

- I wish I had applied for the computer course.
- If only you didn't spend so much time on your PC.
- I wish I could create a webpage.
- If only I had bought that MP3 player.

▶ see pp. 159 (GR10) - 160 (GR11)

8 a) Read the examples in the theory table. Which is: a wish about the present/future? a wish/regret about the past? What words are used to introduce wishes? What tenses are used after these words? Are there similar structures in Polish?

b) Read Anna's thoughts and write sentences, as in the example.

- 
- 1 I didn't buy the laptop. I wish/if only I had bought the laptop.
 - 2 I didn't know it was on special offer, so I didn't get it.
 - 3 The computer I have is not very efficient.
 - 4 Its memory is low.
 - 5 I can't get my work done quickly.

9 Say two things that you wish you did/didn't do, and two things you regret (not) having done.

- I wish I were more patient. If I were more patient, my friends ...
- I wish I had taken my friend's advice and studied harder. If I had taken my friend's advice, I wouldn't have ...

Sentence transformations

10 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 Ann set her alarm for 6:30 in order to get up early.
Ann set her alarm for 6:30 with a
- 2 Peter doesn't have a digital camera.
Peter wishes
- 3 You can take some great close-up pictures with this camera.
This camera is great
- 4 I'm really sorry you didn't get my text message.
If only you
- 5 She worked all night on the music video.
She spent
- 6 He didn't practise enough so he lost the match.
If he had

11 Spend two or three minutes revising the grammar structures you have learnt in this lesson. In pairs, make sentences using them. Tell the class or your partner.

6d Listening skills

- 1 a) Look at the logos. Which is: a search engine? a social network site? a shopping site? a travel site? an online auction site? an encyclopaedia? a film site?



- b) Which are your favourite websites? What is each about?

- 2 a) How do we say each of these? @ _ / .
 Listen and check.

- b) Read the addresses. Which are: email addresses? website addresses?

- 1 www.ebay.co.uk
- 2 www.google.com
- 3 annmiller@freemail.co.uk
- 4 steve_go@registeredsite.com
- 5 www.channel2/competition.net.au
- 6 http://facebook.com

- 3 a) You will hear a radio talk about using the Internet. Before you listen, check these words in your Word List.

- experience • assignment • research
- educational tool • concern • usage
- search word • plagiarism • survey
- acceptable • software • section

- b) Listen and decide if each sentence is True or False. What is the speaker's intention?

- 1 Ms Brady has worked as a teacher for twenty years.
- 2 Ms Brady believes that students don't need the Internet to do their homework.
- 3 Ms Brady thinks parents worry too much about the amount of time their children spend on the Internet.
- 4 The radio presenter worries that students could lie about what they are doing online.
- 5 Ms Brady suggests a way parents can check on their children when they use the Internet.
- 6 Turnitin can help students search for information online.

- 4 a) You will hear a conversation about blogging. Before you listen, check these words in your Word List.

- pseudonym • fake names • identity theft
- hack • update • eventful • lecture

- b) Listen to the dialogue and choose the correct answers A, B or C. Is the dialogue formal or informal? Give reasons. Check on p. 165.

- 1 Lisa's blog is about
 - A her band.
 - B computer software.
 - C her daily life.
- 2 Graham isn't interested in writing a blog because
 - A he doesn't think he has enough free time.
 - B he doesn't think it would be very interesting.
 - C he wouldn't like strangers reading about his life.
- 3 In her blog Lisa
 - A calls herself by a fake name.
 - B makes up stories about her life.
 - C never writes about her friends and family.
- 4 Lisa updates her blog
 - A once a day.
 - B whenever she has something interesting to say.
 - C whenever she has free time to write.
- 5 What is Lisa's relationship to Graham?
 - A They are work colleagues.
 - B They are siblings.
 - C They are close friends.

Intonation in question tags

- 5 a) Read the examples. How do we form question tags?

She worked late yesterday, **didn't she?** ↗ (ask for information)

She can't come, **can she?** ↘ (ask for confirmation)

- b) Complete the question tags.

Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

- 1 You haven't started writing the English essay already,
- 2 You've got a blog too,
- 3 You heard about Jane,
- 4 You'll send me the link later,
- 5 Our English lecture is at half past two,

Speaking skills 6e

Request/Offer help – Complain

- 1** a) Read the first exchange. What is the dialogue about?
 Listen and read to find out. Is the dialogue *formal* or *informal*? Check on p. 165.

A: Hello. Could you help me? I bought a laptop from your shop last month but today it won't turn on.
 B: I'm terribly sorry about that, sir. Let me see if I can help you. Did you bring the laptop with you today?
 A: Yes, here it is and here's the receipt. Do you think you can fix the laptop today? I need it to write reports for work.
 B: I'll try my best. Now, let's see what's wrong. When you try to turn on the laptop do you hear any sounds or are there any lights flashing?
 A: No, absolutely nothing.
 B: Ah OK. There's probably something wrong with the power cable. Let's try to turn it on with a new one.
 A: Oh great. It's working now. Thanks a lot.
 B: It's my pleasure, sir.

b) In pairs, read the dialogue aloud.

- 2** a) Work in pairs. You bought a mobile phone from a phone shop but when you brought it home it wouldn't turn on. Go to the phone shop to complain and request help. Use the phrases from the language box to write a dialogue similar to the one in Ex. 1a.

Requesting help	Offering help
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Could you help me? • Do you think you could help me? • I need some assistance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Let's see what's wrong. • I think I can help you. • Let me see if I can help you.
Making a complaint	Responding to a complaint
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I have a complaint about ... • I'm very upset ... • I feel very disappointed ... 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I'm terribly sorry ... • I apologise sincerely ... • Please accept my apology ...

b) What would communication be like without mobile phones? Write a few sentences. Tell the class.

Comparing photographs

- 3** a) Describe what the people in each picture are doing.



b) Listen to Peter comparing the photographs. How do teenagers use technology these days?

- 4** Look at pictures A and B. Use phrases from the language box to compare and contrast the pictures and talk about the benefits of these means of communication.



Communication using technology

- communicate with people anywhere at any time
- communicate in comfort of own home

Face-to-face communication

- form and build stronger relationships
- communicate without misunderstandings

Contrasting ideas

- ... but ...
- Although ...
- In spite of/ Despite ...
- ...

Speculating

- It may/might/can ...
- It probably ...
- It seems that ...
- I'd say it ...
- Perhaps ...

6f

Writing A for-and-against essay

▶ Writing Bank 6 p. 147 (WB6)

Rubric analysis

- 1** Read the rubric. Identify the key words and answer the questions.

You've had a class discussion about using robots. Now your teacher has asked you to write an essay discussing the pros and cons of using robots. Write your essay justifying your ideas (120-180 words).

- 1 What do you have to write?
- 2 What should the essay contain?
 - A only arguments for the topic
 - B only arguments against the topic
 - C both arguments for & against the topic

Model analysis

- 2** a) Read the model. Which paragraph:

- A gives arguments for the topic?
 B summarises the writer's opinion?
 C states the topic?
 D gives arguments against the topic?



1 Did you know that there are over 8.5 million robots in the world? Robots are being used more and more in our factories, fields and even in our homes, to carry out difficult or repetitive tasks. However, people do not always agree on whether using robots is a good thing.

2 There are a number of benefits to using robots. To begin with, the use of robots increases efficiency and improves safety in factories. This means that people do not have to do dangerous jobs and we are able to produce goods faster and easier. Moreover, the number of employees needed to do a task is reduced. As a result, profits increase for the company.

3 On the other hand, the use of robots has its drawbacks. For one thing, robots tend to be quite expensive to buy and maintain. As a result, large financial investments are required. In addition to this, using robots means that there are fewer jobs for people. This means that there can be higher unemployment and more social problems.

4 All things considered, although there are disadvantages to using robots, I believe that the benefits far outweigh them. Technology is an important part of our world today and if we use it wisely, our daily lives will be easier and less stressful.

- b) Is the writer in favour of or against the topic?
- c) Replace the topic sentences with other appropriate ones.
- d) What style is the essay written in? Give examples.

- 3** Replace the words in bold in the model with phrases from the list.

- Therefore • However
- First • In addition
- As a result • Moreover
- To conclude

- 4** Choose the correct item.

- 1 Many people are in favour of robots, **in spite of/however** there are those who are not.
- 2 The new technology is very efficient, **besides/in addition** being a lot more convenient.
- 3 There are many advantages to introducing robots, **although/despite** there are also some disadvantages to consider.
- 4 **In spite of/However** being a modern miracle, nano-technology makes some people very nervous.
- 5 **Despite/Although** not knowing the long term effects on human health, people continue to use mobile phones.
- 6 Robots cannot think like humans, **however/in spite of**, they can perform many human tasks.

- 5** Study the box, then join the sentences using the words in brackets.

even though/though/
 although + clause
 despite/in spite of + noun/
 -ing form/the fact that

- 1 Mobile phones facilitate communication. They can cause health problems. (**despite**)
- 2 Video games can be used to assist education. Some people can become addicted to them. (**in spite of**)
- 3 Tablet PCs are light. They are expensive. (**although**)
- 4 Smartphones have access to the Internet. Their screens are so small it is hard to read anything on them. (**even though**)

6 Expand the prompts into complete sentences. Then write an appropriate topic sentence for each paragraph.

- A**
- chat rooms & emails/be/ good way/communicate with people
 - educational sites/provide information for school projects

- B**
- some sites/be unsuitable for children
 - chat rooms may be fun/but/you/ not know/who you talk to

Your turn

7 a) Read the rubric and find the key words.

Your teacher has asked you to write an essay on the pros and cons of using mobile phones. Write your essay (120-180 words).

b) Match the arguments (1-4) to the justifications (a-d).



- 1** always connected
- 2** Internet access
- 3** health problems
- 4** expensive

- a** check your emails & reply to important messages
- b** wherever you are you can be reached
- c** monthly service rate can be high if not careful
- d** radiation can be bad for health

c) Which are *arguments for?* *against?*

8 Use phrases from the Useful Language box to join the sentences in Ex. 7b.

9 Use your answers in Ex. 8 and the plan to write your essay in formal style. Make sure you use full verb forms and appropriate linkers.

Useful Language

Introducing topic sentences to express advantages

- There are a number of benefits ...
- There are arguments in favour of ...

Introducing topic sentences to express disadvantages

- On the other hand, there are a number of disadvantages/arguments against ...

Listing points/Giving examples

- To begin/start with .../First of all .../ First ...
- Secondly,/Furthermore,/In addition,/ What's more,
- For example/This way .../Consequently,

Conclusion

- To sum up,/As a conclusion,/All things considered/It is clear that/All in all,

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *state the topic*

Main Body

(Para 2) *arguments for & justifications/ examples*

(Para 3) *arguments against & justifications/examples*

Conclusion

(Para 4) *summarise arguments/state your opinion*



Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for

- spelling/grammar mistakes
- appropriate punctuation
- correct word order
- appropriate formal style
- appropriate use of linkers
- correct layout (well-structured paragraphs)
- inclusion of all points in the rubric
- word length

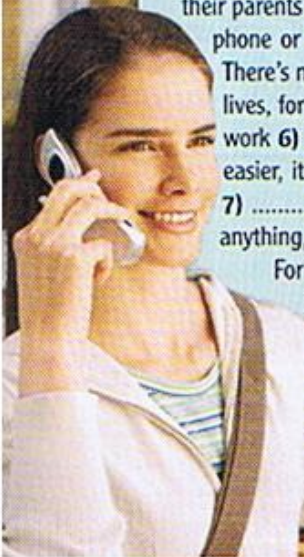
Language Knowledge

6

1 Think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The Age of the Gadget

Digital technology is advancing so rapidly these days **0** that even young teenagers are noticing big changes in recent years. It seems that new gadgets are being released **1** the time and everyone is using them, even **2** it's just the latest mobile phone. Teenagers have **3** much confidence with technology that using a range of gadgets comes very naturally to them. Now it's common to see kids teaching their parents **4** to use their new mobile phone or record their favourite shows on digital TV! There's no doubt technology is a valuable tool in our lives, for people of **5** ages, for both work **6** play. It makes lots of things easier, it saves us time and it helps us to connect **7** people in other places. But like anything, it **8** be harmful in excess. For example, when people spend far more time **9** social media sites than socialising with their friends in the real world. So it's up to us to make **10** own choices about how we use technology and to find **11** balance so that it doesn't rule our lives, but is right there **12** we need it.



2 Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The Queen of YouTube

In 2006, young student Natalie Tran opened a YouTube account and began making her own videos. Each featured a comedy act about the **0** *funny* moments in life, with an **1** from Natalie explaining the video's topic **2** Natalie does all of the writing, acting and video **3** herself. Each video takes about 4 hours to complete and she **4** uploads a video every few days. When YouTube featured Natalie's channel in 2007, her videos became **5** popular overnight. She generated more than 1 million **6**, and over 400 million views of her 200 videos! Natalie **7** has excellent digital technology skills, but that is not why she is **8** She has built up her audience with her funny and **9** content. Natalie is now a world famous comedian and still makes videos for a **10** online audience.

- FUN**
- INTRODUCE**
- BRIEF**
- PRODUCE**
- TYPICAL**
- HUGE**
- SUBSCRIBE**
- OBVIOUS**
- SUCCESS**
- ORIGIN**
- MASS**

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

- 0** George is the only person who has a mobile phone in my class. **NOBODY**
Apart from George, *nobody else* has a mobile phone in my class.
- 1** There is no paper left in the printer. **RUN**
The printer paper.
- 2** I've had this laptop for six weeks and I've only just started to understand how it works. **USED**
It's taken me six weeks this laptop works.
- 3** You should always make copies of important documents in case your computer breaks. **UP**
It's a good idea important documents in case your computer breaks.
- 4** Are you planning on buying a high definition TV? **PLAN**
Do you a high definition TV?
- 5** Joe's mother didn't understand that having a mobile phone was so important for him. **HOW**
Joe's mother didn't understand for him to have a mobile phone.
- 6** I don't like it when people use mobile phones in the office. **WISH**
I use their mobile phones in the office.
- 7** "I wouldn't buy a new laptop if I were you, Claire," said Nathan. **ADVISED**
Nathan buy a new laptop.
- 8** The school lets us use its computers after class. **ALLOWED**
We the school computers after class.

6

Language
Knowledge

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- 1 "How long have you been playing the piano?"
"..... I was in primary school."
A When C Whenever
B Ever since D By the time
- 2 "What did you buy for Nicholas?"
"I bought him polo shirt."
A an expensive, cotton, blue
B an expensive, blue, cotton
C a cotton, blue, expensive
D a blue, cotton, expensive
- 3 "Are you ready to play the lead role tonight?"
"I've read my lines times that the performance will be just perfect."
A many more C quite a few
B so many D too many
- 4 "You didn't send me the information I requested."
"I , but my Internet connection was down."
A would C would have
B can't have D could
- 5 being overpopulated many metropolitan cities are highly polluted.
A Besides C However
B Because D In addition
- 6 "Does he know anything about the latest technological advances in computing?"
"Yes, he's very"
A knowing C knowledgeable
B knowledge D known
- 7 All my life I've dreamt a pilot.
A to be C of being
B I am being D being
- 8 "How did your interview go, Vince?"
"I have a feeling they might"
A to me offer the job
B offer the job me
C offer to me the job
D offer me the job
- 9 More people would enrol on the course if it offered earlier.
A were B would be C should D will be
- 10 She was thrilled I told her the good news.
A as B before C as soon D when

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 Bad weather has slowed down the for survivors.
A chase B research C search D quest
- 2 My history textbook is into six sections.
A divided B shared C broken D parted
- 3 Fire quickly through the building and all residents were evacuated.
A covered C spread
B extended D flew
- 4 A secretary's include answering the phone and typing letters.
A duties B chores C works D services
- 5 Sal stood back to the view from the top of the mountain.
A adore B admire C praise D value
- 6 Sarah kept the children by doing jigsaw puzzles with them.
A employed C occupied
B concentrated D engaged
- 7 We were completely taken by when they showed up at our house uninvited.
A astonishment C surprise
B shock D amazement
- 8 I didn't know how to the bad news to her so I said nothing at all.
A spread C break
B broadcast D declare
- 9 There's no extra for having your books delivered by post.
A price B money C sum D charge
- 10 It was a difficult time, but in the end things all right.
A set back C picked up
B put off D turned out
- 11 We decided to go for a walk along the of the River Eden.
A edges B borders C banks D limits
- 12 Most people support the new law banning traffic from the city centre, but a few it.
A deny B disagree C oppose D argue
- 13 It was amazing to see pandas in their natural
A residence C territory
B habitat D location

Language Focus 6

1 Fill in the words in their correct form.

• practise • exercise
• employ • apply

- When designing robots, the principles of physics and mathematics are always
- John is at a computer software manufacturer. He designs programs for schools.
- The new iPad is quite difficult to navigate, but if you, you'll get used to it.
- It is a good idea to caution when dealing with electricity.

• expand • unfold
• develop • broaden

- Scientists have a new robot that looks like a real person.
- They the photograph to 4 times its actual size.
- This course is designed to your horizons.
- As new technology, cures for many illnesses are being discovered.

• display • demonstrate
• exhibit • prove

- Students who use the Internet have more interest in completing school projects.
- It has been that sitting at a computer for too many hours is bad for your health.
- Inventions from the start of the twentieth century are being in Manchester this weekend.
- The students' science projects were in the school gym.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

2 Choose the correct item.

- I'm sorry but Mike is **out of/away** at the moment.
- Could you plug this **onto/into** the socket, please?
- I'm afraid we might be in **for/after** some pretty bad weather.
- I can't seem to connect **at/to** the Internet.
- All of a sudden this horrible ad appeared **on/in** my screen.
- We're **out of/off** milk again. Could you get some?
- Jennifer is **in for/after** a new tablet PC.
- Well, I'll be **away/off** then. I've got work to do.
- I mostly use the Internet to keep **in/on** touch with friends.
- Could you show me how **for/to** upload these photographs?

Word Formation

3 Complete with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- He waited for his turn. (**PATIENT**)
- It cannot be denied that modern technology has made much easier. (**COMMUNICATE**)
- are working on special robots which will help people cope with strokes. (**SCIENCE**)
- Motors in the robot's body help generate in its head and arms. (**MOVE**)
- Go to the setting and click on 'delete all conversations'. (**PRIVATE**)
- I'll have to shorten my PowerPoint so we can finish before 5 o'clock. (**PRESENT**)

4 Write as many words as you can think of derived from the words in the list as in the example.

- behave (v) • science (n) • apply (v) • react (v)
• investigate (v) • succeed (v)

behave (v), behaviour (n), behaviourist (n), behaviourism (n)

Grammar in Focus

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Then complete the gaps.

I was at my friend's the other day and I saw a pretty cool gadget. It's a mini USB fridge, which can 1) (**use**) to keep your drink cool while you 2) (**work**) on your computer. 3) a great idea! 4) (**be**) honest, I didn't know such a thing existed. It's big 5) to hold one can of cola and really easy to use. All you have to do in 6) to keep your drink nice and cold is connect the fridge 7) your computer via your USB port. The only downside is that you have to wait a few minutes until your drink 8) (**get**) cold. I just love it, and if I 9) (**have**) one of these, I wouldn't have to keep 10) (**go**) to the fridge every five minutes to get something refreshing.

6

Progress
Check

Reading

- 1 Read the text and choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

WHAT'S IN A GADGET?

They keep us in touch with our friends and family, entertain us and even help us find our way. Gadgets are great and almost everyone has one. Have you ever thought about where that curious word 'gadget' comes from, though, or even what makes our gadgets work?

While you might find a large number of English words relating to science and technology have an ancient Greek origin, the word 'gadget' seems to have appeared on the scene not so long ago. In fact, it seems that the word was first used sometime in the 19th century but experts disagree on when and where. According to some experts, sailors used to use the slang word 'gadget' to refer to tools or mechanical parts whose precise names they couldn't remember while other sources maintain that it comes from the French word *gâchette*, a small mechanism, or *gagée*, a small tool or accessory. Today, the word has taken on the meaning of a small, compact, high performance mobile device that requires little or no skill to use and that provides a service or entertainment.

So what's inside these ever so popular and useful whatchamacallits? At the heart of most gadgets, or electronic devices, is the semiconductor. Most semiconductors are made from extremely thin wafers of a very common substance, silicon. In fact, silicon is one of the most abundant materials on the planet and is the main element in sand. It doesn't conduct electricity very well and it isn't particularly valuable.

Silicon is a pure semiconductor and therefore has unique properties. By adding other natural elements to silicon, in a process called "doping", engineers can control the amount of electric current that flows through it. This is very important when making parts for electronic devices such as computers or mobile phones because it is the amount and direction of current that passes through a device that makes it work in any specific way. Inside an electronic device you will find a series of components such as resistors and transistors all made with silicon. A diode, for example, allows electric current to pass in one direction while blocking it from the other direction. So basically, most gadgets have a number of semiconductors that allow various amounts of electric current through in order to control different functions. And that's what makes your gadget work!

- 1 The origin of the word gadget
 A can be found in ancient Greek. C is quite recent.
 B can be found in old English. D goes back a long way.
- 2 Some experts believe that the word was first used
 A to refer to mechanical accessories.
 B to refer to tools whose names sailors easily forgot.
 C as a form of informal speech in French.
 D to refer to a specific sailor's tool.

- 3 According to the text, the main characteristic of all modern gadgets is that they
 A make people happy.
 B are necessary.
 C are small and complicated.
 D are easy to use.
- 4 Silicon is
 A not such a common material.
 B quite expensive.
 C available in large quantities.
 D extremely rare.
- 5 Silicon is useful in electronics because
 A it is unique.
 B it conducts electricity very well.
 C engineers can vary the current flow through it.
 D it doesn't conduct current.
- 6 In the last paragraph, what does the word 'it' in bold refer to?
 A silicon C direction
 B diode D electric current

(6x2=12)

Speaking

- 2 Choose the correct response.

- 1 A: Could you please repair it?
 B: a Yes, here it is.
 b I'll try my best.
- 2 A: I think I can help you.
 B: a Oh, great.
 b It's my pleasure.
- 3 A: Did you bring your iPhone with you?
 B: a Here's the receipt.
 b Here it is.
- 4 A: Were there any sounds or flashing lights?
 B: a Ah, OK.
 b Absolutely nothing.

(4x4=16)

Progress Check 6

Listening

- 3** You are going to listen to a college lecture about social networking sites. For questions 1-6 choose the correct answer A, B, or C.
- The speaker
 - is a professor at the college.
 - is currently studying at the college.
 - has graduated from the college.
 - The speaker states that most university students
 - don't use social networking services.
 - use email regularly.
 - prefer to communicate through social networking sites than through email.
 - The speaker believes that the main advantage of social networking sites is that they
 - allow users to update regularly.
 - allow users to upload different types of content.
 - allow users to get in contact with old friends.
 - The speaker advises users to
 - only give out personal information to people they know.
 - never display personal information on their profile pages.
 - only allow close friends access to their profile pages.
 - The speaker believes that addiction to social networking services
 - is as serious as drug and alcohol addiction.
 - doesn't have an effect on a student's performance.
 - can cause people to forget about their real friends.
 - Overall, the speaker thinks that social networking services
 - are not worth joining.
 - should only be used by adults.
 - should be used with care.

(6x2=12)

Grammar

- 4** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.
- If you send me an email, I (**reply**) as soon as I can.
 - If I (**buy**) a better computer, I wouldn't have had so many problems.
 - If only I (**know**) more people, I wouldn't feel so lonely.
 - If only Tom (**choose**) a better password, they wouldn't have been able to access his account.
 - You (**not/have**) sore eyes if you weren't on the Internet so often.

(5x4=20)

Vocabulary

- 5** Fill in: *browser, deleted, conduct, save, apply, install, networking, access, develop, workload*.
- You can hundreds of files on a smartphone.
 - He all the files from his computer by mistake.
 - Séan is working with a team of web designers to a new site for the company.
 - Modern technology has definitely lightened our in the office.
 - You can't his computer if you don't have the password.
 - You should an anti-virus program if you are going to be surfing the Internet.
 - Scientists will an experiment in their labs.
 - Which web do you use, Explorer or Firefox?
 - They will these principles to build robots that can think.
 - Do you use the Internet for social ? (10x2=20)

Writing

- 6** Read the rubric, then write your essay.

Your teacher has asked you to write an essay about the **pros and cons of blogging**. Write your essay (120-180 words).

(20 marks)

(Total=100)

Check your progress

- talk about technology & gadgets
- talk about likely or unlikely events
- talk about imaginary situations
- talk about the Internet
- complain; request help; respond to complaints; offer help
- write a for-and-against essay

GOOD / VERY GOOD // EXCELLENT ///

Sports & Fitness

Module 7

MODULE OBJECTIVES

▶ Vocabulary

- sports
- sports places & equipment
- prepositional phrases
- phrasal verbs: *put*
- word formation: compound nouns

▶ Reading

multiple matching

▶ Grammar

- infinitive/-ing forms
- tenses of the infinitive & -ing form
- (would) prefer/would rather/had better

▶ Listening

- a documentary (true/false statements, note taking)
- a dialogue (multiple choice)

▶ Speaking

- opinion
- describing a picture

▶ Writing

- a paragraph expressing preference & giving reasons
- an opinion essay

▶ Language Focus

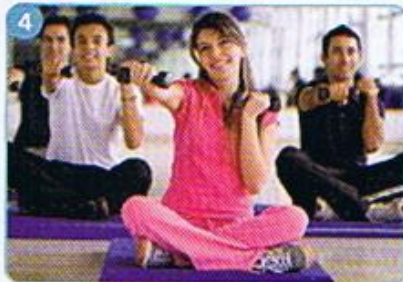
- phrasal verbs & prepositions
- word formation
- grammar in focus

▶ Progress Check

Sports

1 a) Which of these sports can you see in the pictures?

- snow tubing • ice skating • hang-gliding • bowling • baseball
- paintball • paragliding • aerobics • archery • gymnastics
- boxing • squash • skydiving • martial arts • bungee jumping
- zip lining



b) List the sports under the headings:

outdoor – *indoor* – *team* – *individual* – *extreme*.

🔊 Listen and check.

2 Which verbs do we use with each of the sports in Ex. 1a: *go*, *play* or *do*?

🔊 Listen and check.

3 Complete the texts with the words in the lists. Which sport is each text about?

• *gazing* • *adventure* • *popular*

• *ride* • *requires* • *grab*

A It is a competitive 1) sport which has become the world's most 2) way to share the air. If you want to find yourself 3) into the skies, then this might be the perfect sport for you.

• *injury* • *heights*
• *floating* • *challenge* • *training*

B It's a wintertime activity that 1) no lessons. Just 2) your tube, take a conveyor to the top and 3) down the lane on the hill, then get back up and do it again and again. It's fun for all ages.

C For those who have tried it, it is a(n) 1) You jump off and find yourself 2) in the air. It feels like freedom, but it's not for those who are afraid of 3) and requires careful 4) or else it can lead to serious 5)

4 Choose a sport from Ex. 1a and say a few sentences about it. Your partner guesses which sport you are talking about.

7a Reading

1 Check these words/phrases in the Word List.

- territory • endurance event
- bitterly cold • torture • ultimate thrill
- requirements • entire • finishing line
- willpower • soar • plunge • ration
- hardship • push your boundaries
- unpredictable • battle • blisters
- deprivation • deepen understanding

2 The pictures show some endurance events. Why do you think people enjoy participating in them?

🔊 Listen and read to find out.

What is the author's intention?

3 Read the magazine article about athletes who compete in some of the world's extreme endurance races. For questions 1-15, choose from the people (A-D). The people may be chosen more than once.

Which person says:

there was a time limit to the race they competed in?

1

the race they competed in had tremendous elevation changes?

2

they did not win a medal?

3

the rules stipulated they could only have a certain amount of something?

4

they had to meet qualifying standards in order to compete?

5

the choice of when (and if) to rest was left to them?

6

they lacked previous experience of the event?

7

they experienced extreme fluctuations in temperature whilst competing?

8

they had to be totally self-sufficient during their race?

9

their greatest challenge is psychological, not physical?

10

they had the challenge of running under a sun that never set?

11

they have prior experience in the event?

12

they suffered physical injuries in the race?

13

they were responsible for their own medical needs during the race?

14

through endurance racing they have found out what their true limits are?

15

Pushed to the limit

We asked four sportsmen who compete in extreme endurance races in some of the most hostile environments on the planet about their experiences.

A Chris

"The Yukon Arctic Ultra is a 430-mile race across Canada's beautiful snow-covered Yukon territory and the endurance event I most **look forward to** during the year. Trekking hundreds of miles across the bitterly cold Canadian wilderness during winter is probably most people's idea of torture. But to me, nothing beats it. It's the **ultimate** thrill. The Yukon Ultra can be done on cross-country skis, but most competitors - myself included - walk, pulling everything we need to survive behind us on sleds. Apart from checkpoints every 60 miles, survival is totally in our own hands. Typically, I try to keep moving throughout the night, stopping for only a few hours' sleep at a time. It's not unusual for me to get so tired, I have 'waking dreams'. To succeed in completing the Arctic Ultra you have to be super fit and **mentally** strong too. In fact, my biggest battle is always the one I have with my mind."



STUDY SKILLS

Multiple matching

Read the questions and underline the key words. Scan the text for the information you need. As you are reading, underline the parts related to the questions. Read the questions again and answer them one by one, referring to the texts. Some information may be paraphrased. Remember the texts contain similarities.

B Carl

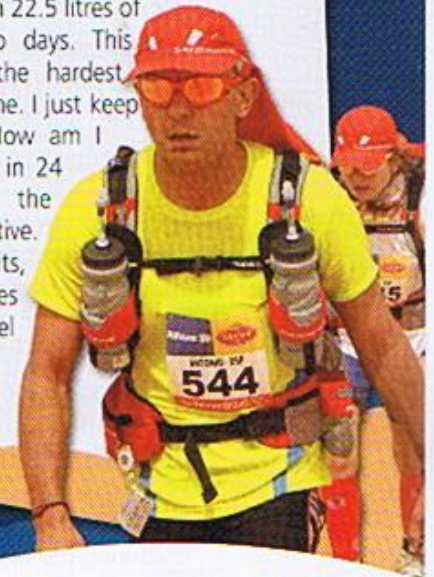
"The Badwater Ultramarathon describes itself as 'the world's toughest foot race' and in my opinion that's not far from the truth. Badwater is, without question, the most difficult endurance event I've ever taken part in. Psychologically and physically, it's extremely **challenging**. About 90 of the world's elite ultra-endurance athletes compete in Badwater each year. Entrance is by invitation and every applicant must satisfy certain requirements in order to apply. The race, which is 215 km in length, starts 85 m below sea level in the Badwater Basin in California's Death Valley and finishes 2,548 m above sea level on Mount Whitney. It takes place in July when weather conditions are at their most extreme and temperatures reach 49°C - even in the shade. The course must be completed in no more than 48 hours. Very few athletes end up crossing the finishing line, it's so **tough**. I did. But it took all my willpower."

**Check these words**

- territory • endurance event • bitterly cold
- torture • mentally strong • battle • willpower
- ration • endurance • plunge • addictive
- boundary • blisters • deprivation • deepen

C Miguel

"The Marathon des Sables (Marathon of the Sands) is a six-day, 254 km ultramarathon held every year in the Sahara Desert in southern Morocco. I've run the race five times now and it never gets any easier. The route covers terrain **ranging** from uneven rocky ground to huge sand dunes. During the day, temperatures in the desert soar to 49°C. At night, they plunge to freezing. A strict rule of the race is competitors must carry everything they need (food, clothing, compass, anti-snake venom, etc) as only water and tents are supplied along the way. Water, however, is strictly rationed throughout the race. Even on the longest stage of the race (the non-stop overnight stage which lasts 91 km) we're allowed no more than 22.5 litres of water over the two days. This stage is definitely the hardest part of the race for me. I just keep thinking: '91 km! How am I going to run 91 km in 24 hours?' Despite the **hardships**, it is addictive. It tests your limits, pushes your boundaries ... it makes you feel alive!"

**D** Ricardo

"This summer was my first time competing in the Bigice Race, an event for teams or solo racers that takes place on the Greenland ice cap, just above the Arctic Circle. Unfortunately, I didn't place. But being new to the event, I was more than satisfied just to finish. The Bigice Race is one of the toughest endurance races. Weather conditions in the Arctic are **unpredictable** at the best of times and during the race I had to battle snow blizzards and temperatures of -35°C in exposed wilderness and 24hr daylight. Finishing the Bigice Race is one of my proudest sporting achievements, not least because I did so in **considerable** pain: I had terrible blisters before the first day was even over. People often ask me what I get out of endurance racing; why I 'enjoy' such hardship and deprivation. The answer is simple. Extreme endurance events **deepen** my understanding of myself. Through them, I get to discover exactly what I am capable of."

**4** Match the words in bold to their synonyms.

- difficulties • demanding
- psychologically • great • anticipate
- varying • strengthen • greatest
- difficult • changeable



Make notes under the headings: *Name of race - Place - Time - Description*. Use your notes to give the class a summary of the text either in English or in Polish.



Would you take part in one of these races? Why/Why not? Write a paragraph. Tell the class.

7b

Vocabulary

Vocabulary from the text

- 1 Replace the underlined words with: *agony, psychologically, challenging, willpower, rise, drop, meet.*

- In this part of the country temperatures can soar to 40°C during the summer.
- Runners who want to compete in the race must first satisfy some requirements.
- The athlete showed great determination to win the race despite his injury.
- The race was so tough that less than half the participants managed to finish.
- In the desert, temperatures can plunge to below freezing during the night.
- The final mile of the race was torture for Bill, but he never gave up.
- You need to be mentally as well as physically strong to take part in the endurance event.

- 2 Fill in the correct form of the words in the lists.

• *dark* • *shade* • *shadow*

- After jogging for an hour, Alex stood in the of a tree to cool down.
- Lia can't sleep in the so she always leaves a light on during the night.
- We could see Paul's before he turned the corner.

• *succeed* • *achieve* • *win*

- The race was by an athlete from Kenya.
- Last week, Ann her goal of running a marathon.
- Terry in completing the race in record time.

Topic vocabulary
Sports places & equipment

- 3 a) Match the sport to the place and the equipment.

sport	place	equipment
badminton	pool	shoes
cricket	track	puck
wrestling	court	ball
running	pitch	headgear
water polo	rink	bat
ice hockey	ring	shuttlecock



- b) Now ask and answer, as in the example.

A: Where can you play badminton?

B: On a badminton court.

A: What do you need to play badminton?

B: A shuttlecock.

- 4 Complete each sentence with the correct form of one of the verbs in the list.

• *throw* • *score* • *serve* • *catch* • *miss* • *win*

- A: Is Amy any good at volleyball?
B: Yes, she is. When she nobody can return it.
- A: Last week you an amazing goal for your team.
B: I just hope I can do the same again in the next game.
- A: If Chris hits the ball I want you to it.
B: OK, coach. I'll do my best.
- A: Daniel the race and will be competing in the finals!
B: That's great news!
- A: If you this shot then we lose the match.
B: Don't worry, I won't.
- A: What is the aim of this game?
B: You need to the ball as far as you can.

- 5 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Check in the Word List. Make sentences using the rest of the words.

- Many *audiences/viewers/spectators* arrived early at the stadium to get good seats.
- Unfortunately, Nicholas tripped during the race and came in last *position/place/point*.
- John has a good chance of winning the badminton *contest/event/tournament* this year.
- The *winner/champion/defender* of the 100 metres waved to the cheering spectators.
- James is the best skater in his ice hockey *group/society/team*.

7b

6 Copy and complete the spidergram. Check in the Word List.

- hurdles • coach • discus • athlete
- javelin • umpire • high jump
- long jump • relay • pole vault • boxer
- cyclist • referee

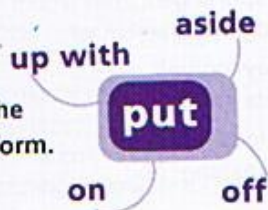


7 Choose the correct word.

- 1 There was a big celebration after our football team **won/beat** the defending champions.
- 2 The referee **blew/threw** his whistle to signal that a foul had been committed.
- 3 Fiona's **personall/private** trainer demonstrated how to use the gym equipment safely.
- 4 We must **gain/win** this match if we are to stay in the tournament!
- 5 The wrestler used his **natural/physical** strength to overpower his opponent.
- 6 Gary is brave and never worries about getting **hurt/damaged** when he plays rugby.
- 7 The player **did/made** things worse by refusing to apologise to the referee.
- 8 A football match usually **keeps/lasts** 90 minutes.
- 9 If you want to play water polo, it is **main/essential** that you know how to swim!
- 10 Karen went jogging every morning to help her **train/work** for the marathon.
- 11 The footballer ran up and **kicked/pulled** the ball past the keeper.
- 12 The weightlifter went on a special diet to **fix/build** up his muscles.

Phrasal verbs: PUT

8 Replace the words in bold with a phrasal verb from the spidergram in the correct form. Check in the Word List.



- 1 He **saved** money so that he could buy a pair of trainers.
- 2 The match **was postponed** due to the rain.
- 3 Nick **got dressed in** his football kit and went to play.
- 4 I don't know how you **tolerate** such bad behaviour.

Word formation (compound nouns)

9 Match the words to form compound nouns, then use them in sentences of your own.

We can form nouns with: noun + noun *car park*; noun + preposition *hanger on*; adjective + noun *monthly ticket*

track	centre
sports	pool
motor	by
running	shoes
passer	arts
swimming	event
martial	racing

Relay is a track event.

Prepositional phrases

10 Choose the correct item. Check in the Word List.

- 1 Carol was afraid **from/of** damaging her ankle if she stayed in the competition.
- 2 Steve always takes great pleasure **with/in** going bowling with his friends.
- 3 The key **in/to** success is to keep trying and never give up!
- 4 Fans who misbehave during the game are **at/in** risk of being removed **for/from** the stadium.
- 5 **In/On** the whole, the sports day proved to be a success.
- 6 The coach knew that he would have to deal **in/with** difficult questions from the media after his team's poor performance.

11 a) Read the examples and complete the table.

Skydiving is popular **although** it is dangerous. **In spite of/Despite** being dangerous, skydiving is popular.

..... + clause + -ing form/noun
----------------	------------------------

b) Use the adjectives to make sentences about the sports below.

- challenging • thrilling • expensive • fun
- tiring • dangerous • exciting • boring

boxing, swimming, golf, aerobics, football, squash, bowling, baseball, paragliding, archery

Although boxing is dangerous, a lot of people enjoy doing it.

7c

Grammar in use

Infinitive/-ing forms

Healthy Lifestyles



Do you want to be fit and healthy?

It's never too late to change your habits and adopt a healthy lifestyle!

Do

- Avoid eating sugary snacks.
- Have a balanced diet.
- Spend at least 30 minutes exercising every day. Adding daily exercise helps you lose weight and keep fit.
- Remember to keep yourself well hydrated.

Don't

- Snack between meals.
- Drink fizzy drinks.
- Eat processed foods.
- Stress. Try to keep a positive attitude instead.
- Exhaust yourself. Give yourself a well deserved rest.

▶ see p. 160 (GR11)

1 Look at the Grammar Reference section and complete the rules with infinitive (with/without *to*) or *-ing* form. Find examples in the text above. Are there similar structures in Polish?

- 1 preposition +
- 2 like/love/hate/enjoy, etc +
- 3 would like/would love, etc +
- 4 can, will, must, etc +
- 5 wait, can't wait, remember, etc +
- 6 let, make +
- 7 look forward to, don't mind, can't stand, avoid, etc +

2 Fill in the gaps with the verbs in brackets in the correct form. Check in the Grammar Reference section. Give reasons.

- 1 A: Joy wants (start) a school netball team.
B: Can I (join) it?
- 2 A: I must (take) up a sport and increase my fitness.
B: That's great. You'll (lose) some weight, too!
- 3 A: I'm not allowed (take) part in the sports gala.
B: You should (talk) to the headmaster!
- 4 A: Let's (go) to the park and play football.
B: I can't. I must (buy) new boots first.
- 5 A: Do you enjoy (go) swimming at the local pool?
B: Not really. I can't stand the children splashing and (shout) there.
- 6 A: We're so late, there's no point in (leave) now.
B: How about (watch) the game at my place then?
- 7 A: I can't wait (finish) these exams.
B: Me too. Until they're over, I plan (study) every day.
- 8 A: Will they let us (play) in the park?
B: No, it's too dark (go) out now.

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the *to*-infinitive or *-ing* form. How do they differ in meaning? Check in the Grammar Reference section.

- 1 a Diane has stopped *eating* (eat) in between meals. (she no longer does it)
b The runner stopped *to have* (have) a rest after training for many hours. (stopped to do sth and then continued what he was doing)
- 2 a Aaron forgot (take) his vitamins.
b Forget about (go) to the gym. I need you.
- 3 a Daniel remembers (meet) his sports idol when he was younger.
b Andy didn't remember (buy) tickets for the match.
- 4 a I will try (think) more positively from now on.
b Ellen tried (diet) and lost several kilos.
- 5 a She used (play) volleyball when she was in high school.
b He is used (exercise) at the weekends.

4 Choose the correct item. Then, put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

Dear Helen,
 I finally decided 1) (go) to the sports camp. The problem is I still need 2) to **get/getting** some equipment. I have a swim suit and mask but I will also 3) (need) a snorkel. Do you think you can 4) **lend/to lend** me yours? I'd also like 5) (borrow) your flippers. I think we wear the same size. I can 6) (collect) the things myself. I promise 7) **returning/to return** them next week. Let me 8) **know/to know** soon, please.
 Sandra

5 Think of your lifestyle. Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 I've stopped | 5 I used to |
| 2 I've always wanted | 6 I must |
| 3 I avoid | 7 I'm used to |
| 4 I'm looking forward to | 8 I try |

Tenses of the infinitive & -ing form

	infinitive	-ing form
Present	(to) play	playing
Present Continuous	(to) be playing	-
Perfect	(to) have played	having played
Perfect Continuous	(to) have been playing	-

see p. 160 (GR11)

6 Look at the table then rewrite the sentences using the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

- She has put on a lot of weight. (seem)
She seems to have put on a lot of weight.
- He is training hard. (appear)
- Ann plays squash on Sundays. (enjoy)
- They usually win home matches. (tend)
- They are sorry they have lost the match. (regret)
- He says he has been practising for four months. (claim)

(would) prefer/would rather/had better

I'd prefer to have a salad.
 I prefer (playing) football to (playing) tennis.
 I'd rather play football than (play) tennis.
 I'd better cut down on fats.

see p. 161 (GR12)

7 Read the examples. Then complete the exchanges using similar structures.

- A: I like swimming more than football.
 B: Really? I prefer
- A: I think we should exercise more.
 B: We'd better
- A: Let's go to the gym.
 B: I'd prefer

Key word transformations

8 Use the words in bold to complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use two to five words, including the word in bold.

- Mary likes aerobics more than gymnastics. **PREFERS**
 Mary gymnastics.
- It's too hot to go to the park. **ENOUGH**
 It isn't to go to the park.
- I'm sure Bob has been training hard for the race. **HAVE**
 Bob for the race.
- The coach made Jeff practise twice a day. **WAS**
 Jeff twice a day by the coach.
- Why didn't the umpire blow his whistle? **SHOULD**
 The umpire his whistle.

9 **Chain story:** In teams, take turns adding a sentence to make up a story, using these verbs: *decide, look forward to, try, manage, start, notice, be afraid of, continue, have difficulty in, stop, see, be happy.*

Team A S1: *Last weekend we decided to go swimming.*

Team B S1: *It was a lovely day and we were looking forward to ...*

10 Think of the grammar structures you have learnt in this lesson. Make sentences using them. Tell a partner.

7d Listening skills

- 1** Look at the photograph. What do you know about this sport? Would you like to do it? Why (not)?



- 2** a) You will hear a documentary about a martial art. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

• *relatively* • *evolved* • *beneficial* • *arena*
• *combatant* • *agility* • *discipline*

- b) Listen and decide if each sentence is **True or False**. What is the speaker's intention?

- Kendo is not as old as other martial arts.
- It was created by a famous Japanese swordsman.
- A Kendo fighting arena is always the same size.
- Kendo can be a noisy activity.

- 3** Listen again and complete the gaps 1-10 with an appropriate word.

Kendo is quite **1** compared to other martial arts.

It is believed that the exact origins of Kendo are **2**.

Japanese swordsmen realised that they needed to guard against injury when **3**.

Wooden **4** replaced dangerous swords when practising.

Each sword is made from strips of **5** tied together.

The practice swords were still dangerous and could inflict **6** or break bones.

The safety equipment in Kendo has been modernised and is now made from **7**.

The rules of Kendo are that you receive **8** by hitting certain parts of the body.

To someone who has not seen Kendo before, it can appear aggressive and **9**.

Jim believes that a person can unwind and do well in Kendo if they clear their minds of **10** by meditating.

- 4** Explain to your partner how Kendo is done.

- 5** a) You will hear a dialogue at a leisure centre. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

• *brochure* • *steam room*
• *multi-purpose hall* • *hire* • *hazardous*
• *lane swimming* • *membership*
• *unlimited access*

- b) Listen and complete the sentences.

- The gym equipment can be to young children.
- On Saturday and Sunday, the centre has club run by youth coaches.

- 6** Listen again and for questions 1-7, choose the best answer A, B or C.

- The customer has come to the leisure centre
A to learn more about what is available.
B to pick up an information brochure.
C to use the gym.
- What facilities are available for private hire?
A the steam room B the squash courts
C the pool and hall
- When should children be supervised by their parents?
A whenever in the gym
B during club activities
C while swimming
- The yoga classes are suitable for
A people with experience. B healthy people only
C people of all levels.
- What does the basic membership include?
A full use of the gym B access to the pool
C evening classes
- How can someone join a privately-run activity?
A by speaking to the assistant manager
B by writing their name on a register
C by calling several days in advance
- What do leisure centre members need to bring?
A their membership card
B their own equipment
C a towel

Pronunciation /ʊ/ /u:/

- 7** Listen and say which word does not contain the same sound.

• /ʊ/ foot, door, book, look
• /u:/ room, spoon, food, flood

Speaking skills 7e

Opinion

- 1** a) Read the first and the last exchange in the dialogue. What is the dialogue about?
 Listen, read and check.

A: Hi John, would you like to come to the gym with me later?
 B: Hi Gary. Umm, I don't think so. I prefer to exercise outdoors.
 A: But going to the gym is great fun! You can meet lots of new people.
 B: Sounds interesting, but I don't think I can afford it.
 A: Actually, membership doesn't cost much. I feel that the many facilities are worth the money.
 B: Do you?
 A: Yes. The gym has a lot of great facilities to help you keep fit, such as the swimming pool, weights room and squash court.
 B: You have a point. Still, I don't feel comfortable exercising around other people.
 A: Why not? Everybody is really friendly and the staff are always helpful. Doesn't that sound good?
 B: Well, I'll think about it and let you know.

b) In pairs, read out the dialogue.

- 2** Work in pairs. Your friend has joined a martial arts class. He/She wants you to join in. Use the ideas below and phrases from the language box to act out your dialogue.

Pros	Cons
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> helps to build discipline good social activity builds strength and character 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You might get injured. It can be expensive. It can take a long time to become competent.

Ask for opinions	Ask for reasons
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What do you think? How about ... ? Doesn't that sound ... ? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do you ... ? Why/Why not? How come?
Give positive opinions	Give negative opinions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I feel that ... In my opinion ... It seems/sounds ... For me it's ... Now that sounds good. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I don't think that ... I don't think so. Sounds interesting, but ... You have a point. Still ... I think ...

Describing a picture

- 3** Look at the picture and complete the gaps with appropriate words.
 Listen and check.

In this picture I can see a young man
 1) He's wearing a blue
 2) and black 3)
 He's also wearing white 4)
 because it's a 5) day. The
 man is 6) along a 7)
 I don't think he is taking part in a
 8) He's probably just
 9) a bike ride.



- 4** a) Look at the picture and make notes under the headings: **People - Clothes - Weather - Place - Activities**

People: a man and a woman

- b) Describe the picture. Use your notes in Ex. 4a.

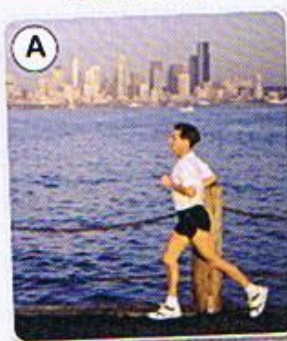


- 5** Look at the pictures A and B and complete the description.

- compared
- but
- because
- both
- also
- either

1) pictures show people doing a sport. Picture A shows a man on his bike. Riding a bike is a great form of exercise and helps you get fit. It doesn't cost much 2) Picture B shows two people skiing. Skiing is very exciting and challenging 3) it requires skill. It's 4) quite expensive 5) to riding a bike. It can be dangerous 6) one can break their leg or get injured.

- 6** Compare and contrast the pictures. Use the text in Ex. 5 as a model.



Both pictures ... It can be ... but ...
 It's also ... compared to ...

7f

Writing An opinion essay

▶ Writing Bank 7 p. 148 (WB7)

Rubric analysis

1 Read the rubric and answer the questions.

You've had a class discussion on the following statement. **All children should play team sports.** Write an essay for your teacher expressing your opinion (120-180 words).

- Which of the following should your essay contain?
 - your opinion
 - viewpoints to support your opinion
 - a description
 - only arguments against the topic
- What style should you use: formal or informal? What characterises this style?

Model analysis

2 Read the model. Which paragraph contains:

- the writer's first viewpoint and example/reason?
- the writer's opinion?
- the writer's opinion restated?
- the writer's second viewpoint and example/ reason?
- an opposing viewpoint and example/reason?

A Recently, there have been complaints that children do not play enough team sports these days. **In my opinion**, team sports are important for children for several reasons.

B **To start with**, team sports are a way for children to learn about discipline and responsibility. This means that every team member has to dedicate time and effort **in order for** their team to do well.

C **Furthermore**, team sports show children how to interact positively with peers. **For example**, teammates need to cooperate and respect one another if they want to succeed.

D **On the other hand**, people argue that team sports are bad because they are too competitive. **For instance**, they say the only goal in team sports is to beat the other team. They forget, **however**, that a little competitiveness is necessary in today's world.

E **To sum up**, I believe children should play team sports. They teach important life lessons about discipline, responsibility and positive interaction with peers.



3 Find and replace the topic sentences in the main body paragraphs with other appropriate ones.

4 a) Copy and complete the table with the linkers in bold in the model.

addition	
contrast	
examples/reasons	
conclusion	
list points	

b) Add these phrases to the table.

- All in all • so that
- All things considered • also
- As opposed to the above ideas
- especially • First of all
- moreover • Firstly • such as
- It is argued that
- For this reason

5 Choose the correct linker.

- Sports make you fit. **In addition/For example**, they are great fun.
- In particular/All things considered**, sports are a good way to spend your free time.
- Famous athletes have worked hard to become successful, **besides/however**, I do not believe they should earn as much as doctors.
- The runner couldn't take part in the race **because/as a result** she had hurt her ankle in training.
- Teammates work together for the good of the team. **Since/ Besides** that, they respect one another both on and off the pitch.

6 Read the topic sentences and write suitable supporting sentences using the prompts. Use appropriate linkers.

- *It is not easy being a professional athlete.*
- *People argue that sports should be about having fun.*

they/have to/eat/special diet
they/say/sports/should be non-competitive

Expressing opinion

- 7 Use the phrases to express your opinion on the following:

All school-age children should be in a team.

Professional athletes earn far too much money.

Expressing opinion

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| • I don't agree that ... | • In my opinion ... |
| • I agree that ... | • I personally think ... |

Your turn

- 8 a) Read the rubric and match the viewpoints (1-5) to the reasons/examples (a-e) they support.

People should only take part in sport in order to win. Write an essay for your teacher giving your opinion on the topic (120-180 words).



Viewpoint

- 1 Aiming to win makes a person give their best effort.
- 2 Aiming to win teaches a person about competitiveness.
- 3 The main point of playing sport is to develop social skills.
- 4 The whole point of sport is to improve physical fitness and mental health.
- 5 The main reason for playing a sport is to make new friends.

Reason/Example

- a People who play team sports meet like-minded people.
- b People who don't exercise have more problems with weight and illness.
- c To be successful in today's world you need to be competitive.
- d Learning to give your best effort helps in all areas of life.
- e Being an effective member of a team requires cooperation and listening skills, and a sense of responsibility.

- b) Use appropriate phrases from the Useful Language box to join the viewpoints to their reasons/examples.

- 9 Use the plan and your answers in Ex. 8 to write your essay.

Useful Language

Introduce topic sentences (list viewpoints)

- To start with, ...
- Firstly, ...
- Moreover/Furthermore it is ...
- In addition, doing ...

Introduce examples

- For example/such as/For instance ...

Introduce topic sentences (opposite viewpoint)

- On the other hand, some people argue/say that ...

Conclude

- All in all, • All things considered,
- To sum up,

Express opinion

- In my opinion, ... • I feel/believe that ...
- Personally, ...
- As far as I am concerned, ...

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *state the topic & your opinion*

Main Body

(Para 2) *first viewpoint & examples/reasons*

(Para 3) *second viewpoint & examples/reasons*

(Para 4) *opposing viewpoint & reasons/examples*

Conclusion

(Para 5) *restate opinion*



Checklist

When you finish writing your essay check for the following:

- word length
- inclusion of all main points
- appropriate style
- correct grammar, spelling and punctuation
- use of full verb forms
- use of linkers to join ideas
- well structured paragraphs (make sure main body paragraphs start with appropriate topic sentences)

- 1** For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C, D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Laugh to Keep Fit

We all know what an important part exercise **0** A in our lives, but more and more of us are getting less of it. People are often advised to take **1** a sport, but it can often be hard to choose one that you enjoy. At our local community centre, this is set to change with the new laughter yoga classes on **2**

Laughter yoga is the perfect **3** of exercise for those who are looking for a fun way to keep fit. You don't need to **4** any special skill; just a combination of a positive attitude and a desire for a fun filled workout.

Classes **5** place every Friday afternoon and involve breathing exercises and controlled laughter. A

6 session begins with gentle warm-up techniques which include stretching, clapping and body movement; followed by a series of laughter exercises in groups to **7** confidence. Time passes by very quickly and before you **8** it, you've done an hour's exercise.

Not surprisingly, this method of **9** out is extremely popular **10** all ages and attracts people from a wide **11** of backgrounds. Even relatively shy people really enjoy themselves. So, if you have a sense of humour and are **12** for a fun way to keep fit, this is definitely the right workout for you.



- 0 A plays B does C acts D means
 1 A on B up C down D after
 2 A offer B demand C display D request
 3 A shape B way C style D form
 4 A possess B own C keep D hold
 5 A get B fill C take D have
 6 A typical B normal C plain D standard
 7 A expand B build C grow D rise
 8 A see B think C know D note
 9 A testing B trying C going D working
 10 A with B to C at D by
 11 A choice B variety C mix D selection
 12 A needing B asking C looking D considering

- 2** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

0 Stuart lives quite close to the gym. **AWAY**
 Stuart does *not live far away* from the gym.

1 Hockey was more tiring than I expected. **SUCH**

I had not expected hockey to
 tiring game.

2 Doctors don't earn nearly as much as professional footballers. **FAR**

Professional footballers
 doctors.

3 They managed to win the game despite the rain. **SUCCEEDED**

Despite the rain
 the game.

4 It's a pity we don't have better seats. **WISH**

I
 better seats.

5 The rules of cricket were not as complicated as I had thought. **SIMPLER**

The rules of cricket
 than I had thought.

6 Faye continued to run even after she had finished the race. **CARRIED**

Faye
 even after she had finished the race.

7 I'm not in the habit of exercising. **USED**

I am
 exercising.

8 We had to put away all the equipment before we could leave. **UNTIL**

We couldn't leave
 all the equipment.

- 3** Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 1 Pete does yoga to increase his and flexibility. **STRONG**
 2 John plays a of sports, but rugby is his favourite. **VARY**
 3 My swimming says I'm ready to start competing again. **INSTRUCT**
 4 Ryan's football skills have improved this term. **CONSIDER**
 5 It's expensive to learn to ski because you need a lot of **EQUIP**

7

Language
Knowledge

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- 1 We'd better tidy up the kitchen Mum will get angry.
A although C instead
B or else D elsewhere
- 2 The new head teacher has a huge difference since she arrived.
A done C taken
B made D marked
- 3 The sales assistant was very and I bought a new laptop, a scanner and a printer!
A convince C convincingly
B convinced D convincing
- 4 "..... I borrow your netbook?" "Sure, go ahead!"
A Would B Should C Will D May
- 5 There was no mention the burglary on the evening news.
A for B to C with D of
- 6 "Edward, you have taken the early train because the meeting was cancelled last night."
"I wish someone had told me about it."
A can B might C could D may
- 7 Does Mary sing her brother?
A as good C as good as
B as well as D as well is
- 8 "More and more people are becoming involved conservation projects."
"Yes, and that's very encouraging."
A about C in
B on D of
- 9 Tommy won't go to bed you tell him a story.
A unless C if
B supposing D provided
- 10 "I now regret school so young."
"Well, it's never too late to carry on with your studies, you know."
A leave C leaving
B to leave D to be leaving
- 11 The shop assistant told me that I produce a receipt to exchange my goods.
A will B may C might D had to

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 The police asked me to describe the robber's physical
A character C appearance
B properties D qualities
- 2 My children have the age when they can care for themselves.
A achieved C realised
B reached D arrived
- 3 There was a blank on Hannah's face so I had no way of knowing whether she was upset.
A expression C impression
B attitude D image
- 4 The police officer admitted that the man was arrested by
A fault C error
B mistake D defect
- 5 Honey and lemon is a home for sore throats.
A solution C help
B cure D remedy
- 6 The northeast of the country gets a lot of rain in the autumn.
A district C field
B region D land
- 7 Scientists have formulated a new theory to explain the of the universe.
A seed C spring
B origin D root
- 8 The story has a lot of attention in the press.
A appealed C drawn
B invited D attracted
- 9 I can't make our appointment today; we'll have to it off until next week.
A pull B get C put D set
- 10 Max made progress in his language class.
A rapid C speed
B active D lively
- 11 The young author's first book was a huge success, but the was rather disappointing.
A sequel C continuation
B series D chain
- 12 Some of my college courses are, while others are optional.
A vital C essential
B compulsory D forced

Language Focus 7

1 Fill in the words in the correct form.

• vast • colossal • massive • wide

- They say that the cause of his heart attack was stress.
- The race takes place in the open spaces of Northern Canada.
- The river is too for us to cross it here – we need a boat.
- The new stadium is awful. It was a waste of tax payers' money.

• attempt • effort • trial • go

- This is great fun! Here, Julia, you have a(n) !
- The climber failed on his first , but he's determined to try again next year.
- You will never succeed in this sport if you don't make more of a(n) !
- Life is all about and error; you learn from your mistakes.

• rely • depend • turn • trust

- The scheduling of the tournament events will on the weather.
- I'm not sure if I that referee; he's made some very strange calls today.
- When I don't know what to do, I know I can always to my parents for advice.
- Don't worry about a thing, Captain. You know you can on me.

Word formation

2 Complete the sentences with words formed from the words in brackets.

- If they had the money, they'd buy the team some better (EQUIP).
- You shouldn't take that injury so; go see a doctor. (LIGHT)
- A weightlifter needs arms and legs to do well in his sport. (POWER)
- I enjoy being out in the , but I wouldn't take part in the Yukon Arctic Ultra! (WILD)
- All must have registered for the competition by Friday. (ENTER)
- He's been bungee jumping, hang gliding and parachuting – he's ! (FEAR)
- Which team has more – Arsenal or Manchester United? (SUPPORT)

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

3 Choose the correct item.

- Sometimes, it's difficult to put **on/up** with my coach's criticisms.
- I've been putting **aside/off** some money for an adventure trip next year.
- On/in** the whole, it's a pretty good team with lots of potential.
- The boxer put **off/on** his gloves and entered the ring.
- The footballer was disqualified **from/of** playing for three months.
- James really took pleasure **of/in** beating his dad at chess.
- The cricket match was put **off/aside** due to bad weather.
- Good food and sleep is the key **for/to** any training programme.
- Unfortunately, I am a bit afraid **of/for** heights.
- It isn't always easy for famous athletes to deal **in/with** the media.

▶ Grammar in Focus

Complete the gaps with the correct word. Then, put the words in brackets in the correct form.

- (adopt) a healthier diet and lifestyle is actually
- (easy) than you might think. Many people find
- hard to make major changes in their habits, but it's not that difficult once you set your mind to it. You can start out by 4) (make) small changes to your routine. For example, get 5) the bus a couple of stops earlier and walk the rest of the distance, just to get a little extra exercise. After a while, you 6) (see) that even this little thing can 7) a difference to how fit you feel. There's no need p you to give up your favourite food either. What you can do is cut down 8) things that are too fatty or sugary, and replace them with healthier alternatives. Of course, it's always advisable 9) (get) advice from a doctor who can help you deal 10) any problems you might have along the way. Just remember that the key 11) becoming healthier is 12) (take) things one step at a time and making the right choices.

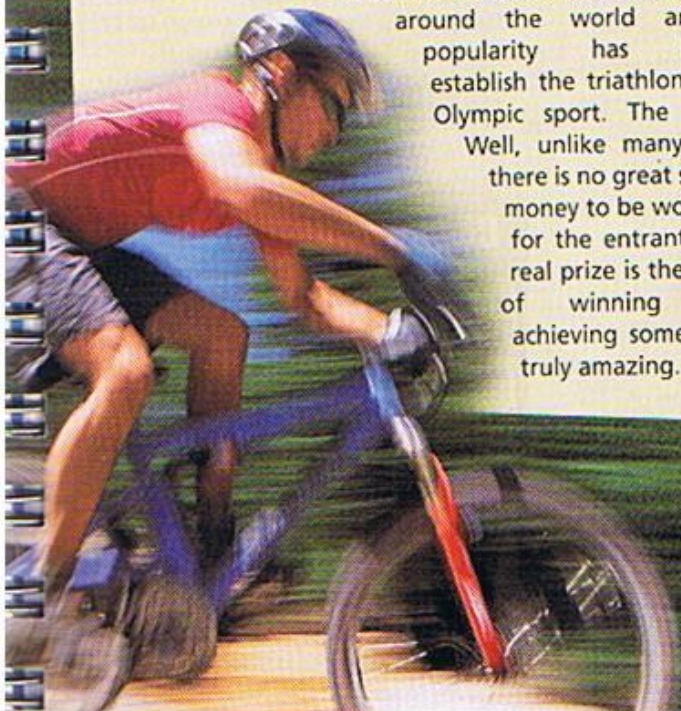


Ultraman

The Ultraman World Championship is an exciting annual three-day endurance triathlon race. It is held on the amazingly beautiful Pacific Big Island Hawaii over Thanksgiving weekend. The Ultraman triathlon is not like any other ordinary race and even the thought of competing in it is daunting. The race covers a total of 515 km and offers a variety of terrains, scenery and challenges. It is divided into three parts that have to be completed in no more than 12 hours each. Participants who fail to reach the finish line within the time limits are automatically disqualified. The first stage consists of a 10-km ocean swim, followed by a gruelling 145-km cross-country bike ride involving mountain road climbs up to 1,828 m. For the second stage, on the following day, the participants are pushed to their limits when they have to cycle 276 km of hilly roads from the Volcanoes National Park in the south of the island to Kohala in the northeast. The competitors who survive the first two stages of the race can look forward to a whopping double marathon consisting of running an unbelievable total distance of 84 km instead of the usual 42 km.

Preparation for such a race needs to be serious and potential competitors would usually have to do a lot of training sessions over a long period building up to the triathlon. Some prefer to train moderately while others do more intense training including cycling up to 200 km in one session, doing 40 to 50 km runs, or swimming several kilometres in cold water as well as following a strict diet. Only the truly determined athlete takes on such a task. Perhaps that is why the challenging race is limited to only 35 invited athletes no younger than 20 who wish to explore the extremes of physical and mental abilities. The rules also state that entrants need to have a support team of at least two people throughout the entire course of the race. Since its beginnings in the late 1970s, the Ultraman

Triathlon has attracted athletes from around the world and its popularity has helped establish the triathlon as an Olympic sport. The prize? Well, unlike many races there is no great sum of money to be won, but for the entrants, the real prize is the glory of winning and achieving something truly amazing.



7

Progress Check

Reading

- Read the text and choose the best answer A, B, C or D according to the text. Give reasons for your answers.
 - According to the writer, the idea of doing the Ultraman is
 - exciting.
 - amazing.
 - frightening.
 - extraordinary.
 - The athletes have twelve hours to complete
 - the whole race.
 - the 10-km swim.
 - the 145-km cycle.
 - each stage of the race.
 - According to the text, the cross-country cycle is difficult because
 - the course goes through a variety of terrain.
 - a lot of the course involves ascents.
 - of the time limit.
 - participants can easily be disqualified.
 - In preparation for the race, all competitors
 - must do very tough training.
 - must follow a strict diet.
 - must practise swimming in cold water.
 - choose their own training programme.
 - The maximum age allowed
 - is not stated in the text.
 - is twenty.
 - is thirty-five.
 - is fifty.
 - According to the text, the race differs from most other races in that
 - only a few athletes participate.
 - the athletes don't really win anything.
 - it is difficult.
 - the entrants need a support team.

(6x2=12)

Progress Check

7

Speaking

2 Choose the correct item.

- 1 A: I feel it is worth the money.
B: **a** Do you? **b** Sounds interesting.
- 2 A: Exercising helps you keep fit.
B: **a** You have a point. **b** Why not?
- 3 A: How about joining a gym?
B: **a** Doesn't that sound good? **b** I don't think so. (3x2=6)

Listening

3 Listen to a radio interview about an extreme sport and complete the sentences with one to three words.

Frank Crane is the **1** of a book about land diving.
Land diving is performed by the inhabitants of a small island in the **2**.

The men of the island jump from a(n) **3** tower that is built each year at the beginning of the dry season.

Only the most **4** divers jump from the highest platform of the tower.

If the vines are **5**, the diver risks crashing into the tower.

To avoid injury, divers cross their arms in front of their chests and make certain to land on **6** and not on their heads.

While the men are land diving, the women **7** at the bottom of the tower to give the men emotional support.

The main reason the islanders perform land diving is so that they can have **8**.

Men who jump from the highest platform are honoured for their **9** and respected by their fellow islanders.

Tourists are not allowed to use **10** while the ritual is being performed. (10x2=20)

Vocabulary

4 Fill in: checkpoints, heights, injury, place, inaccessible, survival, require, track, blew, beat.

- There are a number of along the route.
- Many plants and animals species are fighting for
- He used to compete in events.
- The race route is to cars. You can only walk it.
- Tom is afraid of and wouldn't dream of going bungee jumping.
- The referee his whistle and the match started.
- He managed to his opponent.
- He can't play due to a knee
- My sister won first in the talent contest.
- It doesn't any lessons. Everyone can do it. (10x2=20)

Grammar

5 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- My brother Jake really enjoys **(play)** video games.
- How about **(go)** to see the football match tomorrow?
- You should always **(warm up)** before doing sport.
- Don't forget **(bring)** a first-aid kit with you on the trip.
- She looks very slim. She must **(lose)** a lot of weight.
- Penny is used **(run)** long distances.
- Did you remember **(buy)** the tickets for Saturday's match?
- James missed practice. He may **(still/feel)** ill.
- You're not allowed **(use)** the gym if you are not a member.
- He doesn't remember **(meet)** them last year. (10x2=20)

Writing

6 Read the rubric then write your essay.

You have had a class discussion about exercising. Your teacher has asked you to write an opinion essay entitled **Gyms help us keep fit** (120-180 words).

(22 marks)
(Total=100)

Check your progress

- talk about sports and sports venues
- talk about adventure
- use infinitive & -ing forms
- use *would prefer/rather, had better*
- ask for/give directions
- describe pictures
- contrast ideas
- write an opinion essay

GOOD ✓ VERY GOOD // EXCELLENT ///

Module 8

Nature Attacks!

Natural disasters

1 Listen and say.



Which of these disasters are common in your country?

2 Fill in: *aftershock, cloud of ash, overflowed, mountainside, pulled out, roofs, lava, rubble, under water, eruption, collapsed, banks.*
Which of the disasters in Ex. 1 are the texts about?

A After two hours of heavy rain, the river 1) its 2) and left a large area of the town 3) Many people are still trapped on the 4) of their homes.

B Several buildings 5) but at least 12 people have been 6) from the 7) alive. Rescuers continue working round the clock, amid fears that there will be an 8)

C Thousands of people were evacuated from their homes before the 9) occurred. They saw a huge 10) rise 100 metres into the air while red-hot 11) streamed down the 12)

3 Imagine you experienced one of the disasters in Ex. 2. In three minutes write or say a few sentences describing your feelings.

MODULE OBJECTIVES

Vocabulary

- natural disasters
- the weather
- prepositional phrases
- word formation: verbs from adjectives and nouns
- phrasal verbs: *GIVE*

Reading

- multiple choice
- true/false statements
- answer comprehension questions

Grammar

- reported speech
- reported statements
- reported questions/commands/requests
- reporting modal verbs

Listening

- a radio documentary (true/false statements, multiple choice)
- five short stories (multiple matching)
- pronunciation: homophones

Speaking

- break news
- express surprise/disbelief
- compare photographs

Writing

- an interview
- a story

Language Focus

- phrasal verbs & prepositions
- word formation
- grammar in focus

Progress-Check

8a

Reading

- 1 a) Check these words in the Word List.

• triggered • massive tsunami
 • ground started shaking • siren
 • huge cracks • colossal wave
 • flooded • evacuated residents
 • washed away
 • scale of the devastation
 • heaps of rubble
 • ruins and debris

b) The words are from the text. Read the first sentence in each paragraph. What is the text about? What is the author's intention?

🔊 Listen, read and check.

- 2 Read the text and for questions 1-6 choose the best answer A, B, C or D. Give reasons for your answers.

- The first sign of the earthquake was
 - the cold weather.
 - the earthquake siren.
 - a ground movement.
 - cracks in the road.
- It took 30 minutes for
 - the sea to break the water barrier.
 - the town to be evacuated.
 - the entire town to be flooded.
 - Iris and the camera crew to climb the hill.
- The man who escaped from a building
 - was one of several who escaped.
 - couldn't do anything to save his parents.
 - managed to rescue two others.
 - couldn't believe how lucky he was.
- By Sunday morning
 - all food supplies had run out.
 - the worst of the emergency was over.
 - a further tsunami warning was expected.
 - the water level was still rising.



The day the TSUNAMI STRUCK

In March 2011, Japan suffered the biggest earthquake in its history. The quake triggered an equally massive tsunami with waves reaching up to 15 metres high. Overseas news reporter Iris Morgan was there. This is her story.

A Friday, 11th March, 2011 started as an ordinary day. I was with my camera crew covering a story about the scallop fishermen of the Miyagi prefecture. It was a cold afternoon with a dark sky and it looked like it might snow. I was just finishing the interview when, suddenly, around 14:45, the ground started shaking beneath our feet. Even before the siren started to sound over the town, we knew it must be an earthquake! It became impossible to stand. In a moment, enormous cracks appeared in the road.

- When Iris Morgan returned to the town,
 - the streets were blocked with rubble.
 - she met many homeless people.
 - no building was left standing.
 - she was amazed at what she saw.
- In the last paragraph the local man feels
 - confused.
 - angry.
 - surprised.
 - determined.

B Local people said a tsunami was approaching and urged us to get away as soon as possible. We climbed to higher ground above the town and waited. A short time later we saw the sea rise up in a colossal wave and completely destroy the breakwater that was protecting the coastline. We watched helplessly as the water flooded into the town streets and washed away everything in its path. It seemed the whole town was afloat. Cars, trees, even rows of houses were swept along in the raging torrent.

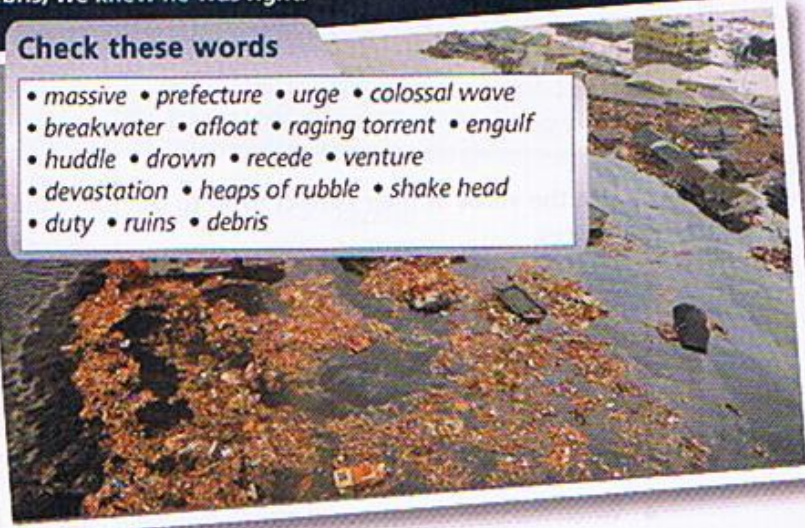
C The rising sea soon engulfed the whole town. It had taken only 30 minutes. Up on the hill, we huddled together with the evacuated residents and tried to keep warm. We were in a state of shock and couldn't believe how rapidly it had all happened. One man told me he had escaped from a building just before it was washed away. He saw many people washed away with it. Two of them were his parents; he had been unable to reach them and thought they must have drowned.

D We spent two nights up there on the hill. On Sunday morning, as the water started to recede, we guessed there would be no further tsunami warnings. We were also extremely hungry, so we decided to venture back down to the town in the unlikely hope of finding some food. We couldn't believe our eyes when we saw the scale of the devastation. Whole streets of houses had been flattened and were now reduced to heaps of rubble. Some very weird sights greeted us: a double-decker bus that had been carried along in the flood was now perched on top of a three-storey building, while somebody's former home stood upon the roof of a primary school.

E As we walked on, shocked and silent, I wondered if the town could ever return to normal. A local woman was shaking her head as she wandered down the road. "I don't know if it's good or bad that I survived," she said as we passed by. Hearing her words, another man left with nothing spoke out: "Those of us who are left have a duty to help each other in any way possible. No one is allowed to give up!" Standing together among the ruins and debris, we knew he was right.

Check these words

- massive • prefecture • urge • colossal wave
- breakwater • afloat • raging torrent • engulf
- huddle • drown • recede • venture
- devastation • heaps of rubble • shake head
- duty • ruins • debris



3 Decide if each statement is *True or False*. Explain your answers by quoting the text.

- 1 Iris Morgan went to Japan to report on the tsunami.
- 2 Nobody expected the earthquake to be followed by a tsunami.
- 3 Food was scarce after the disaster.
- 4 In some streets all the houses had been destroyed.

4 In your own words and based on the information in the text, answer the questions.

- 1 Why did the people move to a higher position?.
- 2 How did Iris Morgan feel when she saw the damage?.
- 3 How did one man show a positive attitude in the face of the disaster?.

5 Find the words in the text which mean:

- usual (para A) • huge (para A)
- to come close (para B)
- to strongly advise (para B)
- to completely cover (para C)
- quickly (para C)
- to go back (para D)
- piles (para D)
- to walk aimlessly (para E)
- obligation (para E)

What part of speech is each word?

6 Write the nouns derived from the words below. Check in your dictionaries.

- possible • reside
- destroy • think
- devastate • survive



Make notes under the headings: *Type of disaster - Place & date/time - Events - Damage caused*. Use your notes and tell the class a summary of the text either in English or in Polish.



Imagine you are a reporter covering an earthquake. You are interviewing survivors. What would you ask them? In three minutes write a few questions. Then write an interview. Tell the class.

8b

Vocabulary

Vocabulary from the text

1 Fill in: *trigger, huddle, evacuate, recede, flatten* in their correct form.

- In cold weather, flocks of sheep together out in the fields to keep warm.
- The authorities managed to the inhabitants of the town before the volcano erupted.
- Pollen in the air in spring can allergic symptoms in some people.
- As soon as the flood waters, volunteers began to clean up the mud and debris in the streets.
- The hailstorm the farmer's vegetable crops.

2 Fill in the words in their correct form.

• *strike* • *hit* • *beat*

- She felt so scared that her heart fast.
- A bolt of lightning the old oak tree in the garden.
- When the tsunami the village most families lost their homes.

• *rise* • *raise* • *arise*

- We got up early and watched the sun over the mountain.
- Please your hand if you have any questions.
- Health problems can from eating too much red meat.

• *reach* • *arrive* • *get*

- Let me know when you at the evacuation shelter.
- It took us ages to to the hotel because of the icy roads.
- When it snows here, it can sometimes a height of 2 metres.

Topic vocabulary The weather

3 a) Copy and complete the mind map using the words in the list. Check any unknown words in the Word List.

• blizzard • gale • hail • drizzle • torrential rain • heat wave



b) Use words from the mind map to complete the gaps.

I'm touring Canada and the USA and weather is very varied. The day we got to Toronto, there was 1) t..... r..... and we got soaked. Then, the week after, we had light 2) d..... every day which was a bit depressing. One day in Alberta there was 3) h..... the size of golf balls and following that we experienced a 4) b....., but Canadians love snow so they just keep going! Then we flew down to Florida where they had a 5) h..... w....., with temperatures reaching 40°C, so we swam a lot. Now we're in Chicago and there is a strong 6) g..... blowing. They call this city the Windy City and I can see why!

4 a) Use the verbs in their correct form to complete the sentences.

• blow • drizzle • howl • freeze • pour • shine

- In England it a lot, which makes everything damp and miserable.
- It's with rain, so wear your wellington boots.
- If you go out without your jacket, you will because the temperature outside is -2°C.
- When the sun it makes everyone happier.
- The strong wind a tree down last night and it blocked the road.
- I could hear the wind all night.

b) Now listen to the sounds and the music. What is the weather like? Draw a picture of the scene. Describe your picture to the class.

5 a) Fill in: *ray, stone, clap, flash, gust, flake, sheet, drop.*

1) a of thunder; 2) a of sunshine;
3) a of lightning; 4) a of ice; 5) a
rain ; 6) a snow ; 7) a of
wind; 8) a hail

b) Use words from Ex. 5a to complete the gaps.

- 1 There was and the noise made me jump.
- 2 shone through the window.
- 3 A lit up the dark stormy sky.
- 4 There was over the road that made driving very dangerous.
- 5 I felt on my face and I was glad I had brought my umbrella.
- 6 is formed from a crystal of ice.
- 7 blew the leaves around her feet.
- 8 A large fell on the car and damaged the bonnet.

6 Choose the correct word.

- 1 The **chilly/cool** air from the fan felt refreshing after their long walk.
- 2 Temperatures in the interior of Antarctica remain **under/below** zero all year.
- 3 Drink lots of water during a **strong/heat** wave.
- 4 The weather **forecast/prediction** said it would be cold today.
- 5 Don't sit in the **heating/blazing** sun all day or you'll get sunstroke.
- 6 The match was cancelled due to the **heavy/violent** rain.
- 7 Ferries were delayed due to the **strong/tough** winds.

7 Match the conditions: *blizzard, hailstorm, heat wave, thunderstorm, tornado, torrential rain* to the sentences. What do you think happened afterwards?

- 1 All we wanted to do was find some shade and drink some cold water.
- 2 I was soaking wet when I arrived at work.
- 3 We were woken up by the noise; the whole sky lit up.
- 4 When we came up from the basement we saw all the damage it had done.
- 5 Everything was white; I could barely see the road I was driving on.
- 6 We could hear the small white balls beating continuously against the windows.

Prepositional phrases

8 Underline the correct item. Check in the Word List.

- 1 Following the storm, drivers should beware **of/in** fallen trees.
- 2 The explorers had to cope **with/at** heavy blizzards and the extreme cold.
- 3 Flooding caused damage **at/to** all buildings along the road.
- 4 I was frightened **about/of** thunderstorms when I was little.
- 5 The tornado swept up everything **in/on** its path.
- 6 He never complains **of/about** the weather no matter how bad it is.

Word formation (verbs from adjectives and nouns)

9 Read the rule, then form verbs from the adjectives/nouns to complete the sentences.

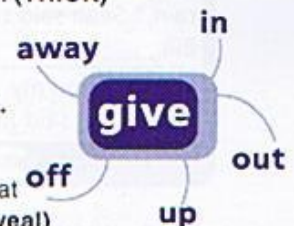
We use these suffixes to form verbs from adjectives or nouns: **-en** (*bright-brighten*), **-ise** (*mobile-mobilise*)

- 1 During the cold winter months, travel agents holidays in warm exotic places. (**ADVERT**)
- 2 The sky gradually and then it began to rain. (**DARK**)
- 3 The weather in my country is by long hot summers and short mild winters. (**CHARACTER**)
- 4 As the fog continued to, it became too dangerous to drive, so we got out of the car and walked. (**THICK**)

Phrasal verbs: GIVE

10 Choose the correct particle. Check in the Word List.

- 1 I won't give what happened in the end. (**reveal**)
- 2 Some people were giving free suntan lotions. (**distribute**)
- 3 Janice gave sunbathing because it was damaging her skin. (**stop doing**)
- 4 James finally gave to his wife's suggestion and went on a winter skiing holiday. (**agree to do sth you don't want to**)
- 5 The plants in the garden gave a fresh sweet smell after the heavy rain. (**emit**)



8c

Grammar in use

Reported speech

Direct speech is a person's actual words. Reported speech is the exact meaning of what someone said.



see p. 161 (GR12)

- 1 a) Read the joke. Which speaker uses *reported speech*?

b) Read the table and answer the questions.

Reported statements

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
"I'm tired," said Ann.	Ann said (that) she was tired.
"It's raining," Kim said to Pete.	Kim told Pete (that) it was raining.
"I've shovelled the snow," said Ben.	Ben said (that) he had shovelled the snow.
"It snowed yesterday," said Rose.	Rose said (that) it had snowed the previous day.
"It was pouring with rain," Sean said to Bill.	Sean told Bill (that) it had been pouring with rain.
"I'll lend you my umbrella," said Jim.	Jim said (that) he would lend me his umbrella.

see pp. 161 (GR12) - 162 (GR13)

- Which verbs do we use to report someone's words? Which verb do we use, in both direct and reported speech, when the person spoken to is not mentioned?
 - How do tenses change from direct to reported speech?
 - How do pronouns / possessives change?
 - In picture 2 of the joke what had the father actually said to his son?
- c) Are there similar structures in Polish?

- 2 Choose what the speaker actually said.

- John told Simon it was still raining.
 - "It is still raining."
 - "It was still raining."
- He said he had seen John at the pool.
 - "I'll see John at the pool."
 - "I saw John at the pool."
- Ian said they would meet me after lunch.
 - "I'll meet you after lunch."
 - "We will meet you after lunch."
- Pam said that she had been swimming in the pool the previous afternoon.
 - "I was swimming in the pool yesterday afternoon."
 - "I have been swimming in the pool this afternoon."

- 3 Report Nick and Linda's sentences. Use *said* or *told*.



4 Rewrite the statements in reported speech.

- "I don't want to go to the beach today," said Jimmy.
- "When it stops raining, you can play outside," Kate said to her son.
- "They haven't cleared the roads," said Jane.
- "Tom went to Hawaii last month and he's looking for a job," Paul said to Lisa.
- "The rescue team was searching the rubble yesterday afternoon at 4:00," Andy told Fran.
- "I will give you a lift to the airport tomorrow if it rains," Jack said to me.

Reported questions/commands/requests

Will you come to the pool with me later? What time are you going?



Frank asked me if/whether I would go to the pool with him later.

I asked him what time he was going.

He asked/told me to meet him at 8:00.

He asked/told me not to be late.



see p. 162 (GR13)

5 Dan met Frank earlier. Read how he reports the conversation and answer the questions (1-3).

- Which verb is used to report questions?
- Which words are used to introduce a reported question when there is no question word?
- How do we report a positive/negative command/request? Which verbs can we use to report a command/request?

6 Report the sentences.

- "What is the weather like?" Tom asked Jane.
- "Can you lend me your raincoat?" Bob asked Linda.
- "How did he manage to survive?" Julia asked Sam.
- "Can we leave a bit earlier?" he asked me.
- "When did it start raining?" she asked me.
- "Give me a towel, please," she said.
- "Don't go near there," the teacher said.
- "Put some sunscreen on," she told Ann.

7 Look at the Grammar Reference section p. 164 (GR14). Choose a verb from the list to report the statements.

- promised • offer • suggested
- explained • denied

- "Let's go on holiday," Philip said.
- "I didn't take your umbrella!" Kathy shouted.
- "I'll bring it back tomorrow. Really!" Alex said.
- "We can't play today; it's snowing," Sam said.
- "I'll help you pack your suitcases," he said.

8 Look at the table. Then turn the following sentences into reported speech.

Reporting modal verbs

will/would → would, may → might, must → must/had to, can → could (present)/would be able to (future)

Would, could, used to, mustn't, should, might and ought to do not change.

see p. 162 (GR13)

- "You must lock all the windows," she said.
- "David can help you build a snowman later," she said to me.
- "We'll go to the park," he said.
- "We can leave tomorrow," Ann said.
- "You shouldn't go in without permission," he said to Bill.
- "It may snow tonight," she said.

Key word transformations

9 Use the words in bold to complete the second sentence, so that it means the same as the first. Use two to five words.

- "I can't stand this bad weather," she said. **COMPLAINED**
She weather.
- "You should take an umbrella with you," he said. **ADVISED**
He an umbrella.
- "Let's find somewhere to hide," John said. **FINDING**
John to hide.
- "Call an ambulance," Jill said to Peter. **TO**
Jill an ambulance.
- "No, I won't leave my house," the old lady said. **REFUSED**
The old lady house.

8d

Listening skills

- 1 a) You will hear a radio documentary about a country's climate. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

• unpredictable variations • depressions
 • anticyclones • spinning clockwise
 • ocean current • high/low pressure
 • subtropical climate • vessels

- b) Listen to the radio documentary and decide if these sentences are *True* or *False*.

- 1 Japanese weather can always be easily forecast.
 2 Palm trees need help to grow in southern Japan.
 3 The very cold and strong winds in Japan come from Russia and the Arctic.
 4 No ships can move in the frozen seas of northern Japan.

- 2 Listen again and choose the correct answers A, B or C for questions 1-6.

- 1 Subtropical climates are characterised by ...
 A different seasons.
 B warm weather with some extended periods of heavy rainfall.
 C heavy showers of rain daily.
- 2 Heavy rain in southern Japan is caused by ...
 A its proximity to Russia. B anticyclones.
 C depressions.
- 3 The climate in northern Japan is ...
 A very wet. B the same as China.
 C colder than southern Japan.
- 4 What are ice-breakers?
 A A type of sea ice.
 B Ships which push other boats through the ice.
 C Ships which make a passage for other boats through the sea ice.
- 5 The Gulf Stream is ...
 A another name for the Black Stream Current.
 B a warm ocean current which flows to the UK.
 C a warm ocean current which flows around southern Japan.
- 6 Why do coral reefs exist in Japanese waters?
 A The Black Stream Current brings warm water from Taiwan.
 B The Black Stream Current cools the sea temperature so coral can grow.
 C Because of the subtropical climate of southern Japan.

- 3 Compare weather conditions in Japan to your country's.



- 4 You will hear five short stories about natural disasters. Before you listen, check these words in the Word List.

• surrounded • erupt • lava
 • ash • unsettling • stinging
 • regenerate • captivated
 • dazzling

- 5 Listen and match the speakers (1-5) to the sentences (A-F). There is one extra sentence you do not need.

- A We knew how to protect ourselves.
 B It made me think how I could help.
 C We were cut off for a couple of days.
 D It was very scary to see it coming towards me.
 E He was determined to save his town.
 F He was very lucky to survive.

Speaker 1	
Speaker 2	
Speaker 3	
Speaker 4	
Speaker 5	

Pronunciation – Homophones

- 6 Homophones are words which sound the same but they have different meanings and spelling. Match the homophones.

Listen and repeat.

1	raise	a	knight
2	dear	b	whole
3	night	c	know
4	no	d	deer
5	hole	e	rays

Speaking skills 8e

Break news – Express surprise/disbelief

- 1 Read the news headline. What do you think it's about?

WRECKED SHIP'S CREW SWIM TO SAFETY

- 2 a) The dialogue is related to the news headline. What do you think the people are discussing?

🔊 Listen, read and check.

Suzie: Hey, Mark. Listen to this story for a minute.
 Mark: Sorry, what's that?
 Suzie: I've just read an interesting story in today's newspaper. Have you read it yet?
 Mark: No, not yet.
 Suzie: OK. Listen to this! It says here a cargo vessel sank near Crovie.
 Mark: No, really? That's only twenty minutes away from here.
 Suzie: Yes, exactly. And supposedly the ship's cargo has washed up on the beach.
 Mark: Never! I don't believe it! What happened exactly?
 Suzie: Well, you heard the storm last night, didn't you?
 Mark: Yes, of course. It kept me awake half the night.
 Suzie: The ship got caught in the wind and the waves. The crew must have lost their bearings and then the ship hit the rocks. The rocks tore a hole in the side of the ship and it started sinking. The crew felt terrified, but thankfully everyone managed to swim to safety. It says here that all the cargo floated to the surface and that it had all washed up on the shore by the morning. However, the crew was just happy to have survived.
 Mark: What a nightmare! At least no one got hurt.

b) Take roles and read the dialogue aloud.

- 3 Work in pairs. Use the phrases in the language box, the headline and the notes to act out a similar dialogue to the one in Ex. 2a.

EARTH SHAKES IN NORTHERN TOWNS

early yesterday morning – towns in the north of the country – felt the ground shaking – houses & offices shook – lasted for about thirty seconds – everyone relieved when it stopped – no damage done

Breaking news	Expressing surprise/disbelief
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You'll never guess / believe what / who ... Guess what! ... I've just heard / read the ... news! Have you heard ...? Listen to this! Wait till you hear ... Do you know ...? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Really? I don't believe it! You're joking / kidding! Never! / Wow! That's unbelievable! You're not serious, are you? How awful / terrible! You've got to be joking! You can't be serious! That's dreadful / terrible news! What a nightmare!

Compare photographs

- 4 a) Compare the photographs and say how the weather affects how we feel and what we do. Use the phrases from the language box and the ideas to help you.



Useful language

- In the summer/ winter, people usually feel ...
- You can ... in the summer/winter.
- However, the summer/ winter is better/worse for ...
- When it's hot/ cold, ...
- The weather can affect ...

Ideas

winter activities:
make a snowman, slide down snow, ski/snowboard, stay indoors, etc.

summer activities:
play sports, go to the beach, spend time outdoors, go camping, etc.

feelings:
excited, energetic, depressed, relaxed, optimistic, etc.

b) Which season do you prefer? How does it make you feel and what activities do you like to do then? Tell the class.

8f

Writing A story

▶ Writing Bank 8 p. 149 (WB8)

Rubric analysis

1 Read the rubric and answer the questions.

Your favourite magazine is having a short story competition. The story should be entitled **A day I'll never forget** (120-180 words). Write your story.

- 1 What are you going to write?
- 2 Who is going to read it?
- 3 What should your story be about?
- 4 What person, first or third, will it be written in?
- 5 What tenses will you mainly use?

Model analysis

2 a) Read the story and choose the correct word.

A When I entered the gym that evening I had no idea what was going to happen. As usual, I went up to the first floor and started working out.

B 1) **After/Next** I finished, two hours later, I realised the place was empty. 2) **Then/As** I was walking slowly downstairs, I heard a terrible rumble, like thunder. Within seconds the walls collapsed around me. I fell and was lying in total darkness.

C I was trapped. I screamed hysterically 3) **but/so** I realised it was useless. Those hours were the longest of my life. It seemed like an eternity 4) **after/before** I heard loud voices coming towards me. I shouted frantically for help. A man shouted back, "Don't panic. We'll get you out of there."

D 5) **As soon as/Finally** they removed the debris and I saw the rescuers' faces, I knew I would be safe. My leg was hurting terribly but I felt relieved just to be alive!

b) Which paragraph includes

- 1 the climax event?
- 2 how the story ended and the writer's feelings?
- 3 setting the scene?
- 4 events leading to the climax event?

3 List the events in the story in the order they happened. Use *first*, *then*, *next*, *after that*, *finally* to retell the story.

4 Find an example of *direct speech* in the story. Rewrite it as reported speech.

5 a) Find the adjectives the writer uses to describe the following nouns.

• *rumble* • *darkness* • *hours* • *voices*

b) Find the adverbs the writer uses to describe the following verbs.

• *was walking* • *screamed* • *shouted*
• *was hurting*

6 Link the sentences. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 I got to my room. I started to unpack. (**as soon as**)
- 2 I changed my clothes. I went for a night out. (**and then**)
- 3 I was excited. It was my first visit to Rome. (**because**)
- 4 I packed my suitcase. I called a taxi. (**before**)
- 5 I realised I didn't have my passport. I started to panic. (**when**)

STUDY SKILLS

Setting the scene

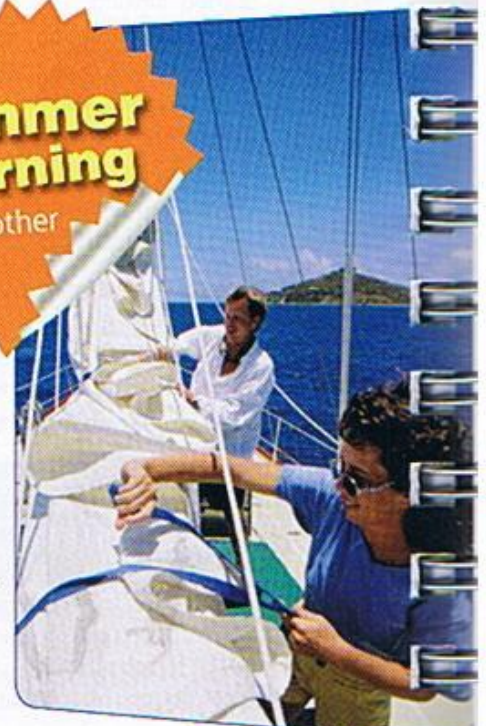
To set the scene close your eyes and imagine that you are looking at a picture. Try to describe the place (*where*), the time (*when*), the weather, the people involved (*who*) and their feelings.

summer morning

• my brother

Setting the scene

7 Look at the picture and write a short paragraph to set the scene.



Adjectives/Adverbs

- 8** Replace the adjectives in bold with: *terrifying, deafening, pleased, relieved, comfortable*.

As soon as I got onto the plane, I sank into my **1) nice** seat, **2) glad** to be on my way. A short while after we had taken off, there was a **3) big** clap of thunder. Then the plane started rocking from side to side and we all gasped in horror. "We're losing altitude!" a passenger cried. After a few minutes, the plane stopped shaking and everyone was **4) OK!** It was a **5) bad** experience.

- 9** Fill in: *anxiously, slowly, loudly, patiently, hungrily*.

- 1 There was a long queue for tickets at the train station, but Nathan waited for his turn.
- 2 Paddy was listening to his car radio as the traffic was moving along the motorway.
- 3 Having spent the day trekking in the mountains, Clare ate in the village's only restaurant.
- 4 "There's too much snow for us to climb it today," John thought as he looked at the mountain.
- 5 Nora screamed at the sight of the huge lion.

Your turn

- 10** Read the rubric, then plan your story. Use the questions in the Brainstorming box.

The school magazine is having a short-story competition. The story should be entitled: **A holiday where everything went wrong** (100-180 words).

Brainstorming

Before you start writing, think about:

Theme: What will your story be about?

Main Character: Who are you? What are you like?

Setting: Where does your story take place? (*in space? in Italy? in your garden? in an imaginary place?*) What is the weather like?

Problem: What is the problem you face? Do other characters help you solve it? What do you do to solve the problem?

Resolution: What happens in the end? How do you feel?

- 11** Check theory in the Writing Bank p. 149 (WB8). Use your answers in Ex. 10 and the plan to write your story. Use language from the Useful Language box.

Useful Language

Setting the scene

- It was a ... day/evening last ... summer/weekend etc.
- I was ...

Events

As I/we were... Suddenly, I/we saw/heard ... Then, ... Finally, ...

Feelings

- I felt happy/excited because ...
- I couldn't believe my eyes when ...
- To my horror/amazement/surprise etc, ...
- I felt relieved to be safe and sound.

Plan

Introduction

(Para 1) *set the scene*

Main Body

(Paras 2-3) *events in order they happened - climax event*

Conclusion

(Para 4) *end the story - feelings*



Checklist

When you finish your piece of writing check it for the following:

Story organisation

- Has your story got an introduction, main body and conclusion?
- Are the paragraphs clearly laid out?
- Is the sequence of events clear to the reader?

Structure details

- What tenses have you used?
- Have you used linking words?
- Have you used a variety of adjectives and adverbs?
- Have you used direct speech?
- Are there any spelling or grammar mistakes?
- Have you punctuated your story properly?

Language Knowledge

8

1 Think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Hurricane Katrina

Advances in modern technology mean **0** *that* we can now predict weather patterns **1** great accuracy. But every now and **2** we are reminded of the power of nature and of **3** helpless we really are. Take, for example, Hurricane Katrina.

Hurricane Katrina started out as a low pressure system on 25th August, 2005. This grew into a tropical storm, **4** became a hurricane. It blew across Florida, before moving into the Gulf of Mexico. **5** the time it hit New Orleans on 29th August, Hurricane Katrina had a speed of 200km **6** hour.

New Orleans is protected from flooding **7** artificially raised river banks. However, Hurricane Katrina breached **8** banks and the city began to flood. By 31st August, 80% of New Orleans was under water. Thousands of people were **9** homeless. Fires broke out and there were several explosions from a chemical plant. Altogether, nearly 2,000 people died.

Hurricane Katrina was one of the **10** expensive and deadly natural disasters in the history of the United States. The destruction of New Orleans serves **11** a grim reminder that we can watch the weather, **12** we cannot control it.

2 Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the gap. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Super Volcano

Yellowstone National Park, U.S.A. has awe-
0 *inspiring* scenery, over 290 waterfalls and one of the world's **1** petrified forests. But that isn't all. Apart from an enormous **2** of animal and plant **3** , Yellowstone is also sitting on top of a giant volcano.

640,000 years ago there was a "super eruption". This was an event so huge that it **4** blew away the top of the volcano. The landscape after the eruption was **5**

Today it is believed that Yellowstone is quite **6** to erupt again, and if it did, it would probably be a small **7** event. If, however, there is another super eruption, it would alter the **8** climate, which would in turn cause the **9** of crops. Some experts think it could be 90,000 years before another super eruption at Yellowstone. But the truth is, neither **10** nor anybody else really knows.

INSPIRE
LARGE

DIVERSE
LIVE

COMPLETE

RECOGNISE

LIKE
SIGNIFY

GLOBE
DESTROY

SCIENCE

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. You must use two to five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

0 All the buildings were destroyed in the earthquake apart from the school. **ONLY**
The school was the *only building not to be* destroyed in the earthquake.

1 "We don't think there will be another hailstorm soon," the scientists said. **DOUBTED**
The scientists said that they another hailstorm soon.

2 The level of flood water is the same as yesterday. **CHANGED**
The level of flood water since yesterday.

3 The villagers had hardly any help after the landslide. **ALMOST**
The villagers had after the landslide.

4 The people ran, but they were too slow to escape the tsunami. **FAST**
The people ran, but they to escape the tsunami.

5 "We expect another eruption soon," said the spokesman. **NEAR**
"We expect another eruption future," said the spokesman.

6 On learning about the tornado, the mayor immediately evacuated the town. **SOON**
The mayor evacuated the town about the tornado.

7 The residents didn't know that their town was built on the slopes of a volcano. **UNAWARE**
The residents their town was built on the slopes of a volcano.

8 Nowadays, snow is rarely seen in the city centre. **RARE**
Nowadays, snow in the city centre.

8

Language
Knowledge

Grammar

4 Choose the correct item.

- 1 "Is this castle really haunted?"
"That's most people say."
A where B what C how D why
- 2 "This area used to have a lot of wildlife."
"I know. It's sad that you hardly see animals
around here nowadays."
A many B some C no D any
- 3 It's getting to find employment these days.
A more hard C more and harder
B hardest D harder and harder
- 4 I have very little experience using this
computer program.
A on B about C in D over
- 5 Not all students can afford to wear labels.
A designer C designing
B design D designed
- 6 "I'm looking for Mr. Patterson."
"He's the brown-haired gentleman at the
reception desk."
A sitting C who's he sitting
B who sitting D that sitting
- 7 A flying saucer was seen flying over the city.
A report C reportedly
B reported D reporting
- 8 "I'm having trouble with geometry."
"..... studying together this weekend?"
A Why not C Why don't we
B How about D Should we
- 9 Fred can't go to that heavy metal concert
because his parents
A not let it C won't let him
B don't allow D won't allowed him
- 10 All students at our school to wear a school
uniform.
A require C have required
B are required D they require
- 11 Joe staying in a hotel to staying at a
campsite.
A would rather C had better
B would prefer D prefers
- 12 scientists predict that the Earth will get
warmer.
A Most of the C The most
B Most D Most of

Vocabulary

5 Choose the correct item.

- 1 The population of this country is 10 million.
A closely C approximately
B generally D clearly
- 2 You are required to have the proper to work
as an accountant.
A qualifications C experiments
B qualities D experiences
- 3 Have you seen the edition of our school
magazine?
A freshest C latest
B highest D foremost
- 4 The building was completely in the fire.
A harmed C destructed
B crushed D destroyed
- 5 I'm going to a visit to my great-grandmother
next week.
A have C pay
B do D give
- 6 We aren't allowed to set up camp here unless we
get
A licence C pass
B authority D permission
- 7 You must follow the safety instructions to
accidents.
A decline C refuse
B avoid D resist
- 8 It's cruel to keep animals in
A slavery C captivity
B prison D detention
- 9 David was not in the class discussion.
A inserted C participated
B involved D taken
- 10 I had feelings about my parents' decision to
move to France.
A mingled C messed
B merged D mixed
- 11 Our new CD will not be on until the next
month.
A purchase C market
B sale D retail
- 12 I don't mind going to the post office; it's no at
all.
A matter C concern
B difference D trouble

- 1 Use the words in their correct form to complete the gaps.

• ordinary • common • frequent
• customary

- It is in the USA to tip waiters when you eat out.
- We had quite a(n) weekend; we didn't do anything special.
- Thomas is a visitor to this restaurant.
- It is not for temperatures to be so low at this time of year.

• recommend • force • urge • insist

- The mayor the public to not waste water during the drought.
- Rachael on leaving the town before the hurricane arrived.
- The authorities everyone to leave the island immediately.
- I you call social services about the flooding of your house.

• situation • condition • state • frame

- Everyone was in a of shock.
- The reporter was not in the right of mind to appear on TV.
- The man who was pulled from the rubble remains in a critical
- The president said the was under control.

• warning • alarm • alert • notification

- John received that all his family had survived the earthquake.
- The volcano erupted with no ; luckily the locals managed to escape.
- A(n) radio was announced when experts said the volcano could erupt at any time.
- The mayor said there was no cause for despite the river breaking its banks.

• shake • wave • tremble • sway

- The building from side to side during the earthquake.
- The old man just his head in disbelief when he saw the destruction.
- The woman with fear as the tsunami got closer and closer.
- The helicopter pilot could see a man on top of the house and shouting for help.

Phrasal verbs & Prepositions

- 2 Choose the correct item.

- I'm frightened **about/of** earthquakes.
- I can't cope **with/about** humidity which is why I could never live in the tropics.
- We're giving these products **off/away** for free.
- He complains **of/about** headaches.
- They gave **out/up** trying to clear the snow.

- 3 Complete the gaps with the correct form of the words in bold.

- Please yourself with this document. (**FAMILIAR**)
- We need to our holiday plans. (**FINAL**)
- The farmer wants to up his chickens. (**FAT**)
- She felt as she watched the tsunami wash away her car. (**HELP**)
- The of the house climbed onto their roof and waited for help. (**RESIDE**)
- The children were frightened by the sound of the thunder. (**EXTREME**)
- The journalist was shocked by the caused by the earthquake. (**DEVASTATE**)
- There is a strong that survivors will still be found in the rubble. (**POSSIBLE**)
- They could see a wave approaching the coastal town. (**MASS**)

Grammar in Focus

Complete the gaps with the correct word. Then put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

19-year-old climber Peter Smithers made the news last week when he miraculously escaped 1) an avalanche in Scotland. He said he 2) (**climb**) up a snow-covered slope in Ben Nevis when he stopped 3) (**get**) some supplies from his backpack. Suddenly, 4) was a loud rumble like a train approaching and the next thing he knew, he 5) (**tumble**) down the slope in a massive wave of snow that was sweeping away everything 6) its path. Smithers 7) the reporters that it had all happened so quickly that he hardly had time to think. Fortunately, after 8) (**fall**) for 500 metres, he was uninjured. But the lucky climber didn't complain 9) his ordeal. Asked 10) he would do a similar climb again, he replied that he 11) already started making plans to return to Scotland the 12) year.

8

Progress
Check

"THE YEAR WITHOUT A SUMMER"

– the Eruption of Mt Tambora, 1815

In 1816, Europe and North America suffered their worst summer in centuries. Cold temperatures brought heavy rains, frosts and snowfalls. Harvests failed, livestock died, and the famine and disease that resulted led to the deaths of hundreds of thousands of people. The year 1816 came to be known as 'the year without a summer'.

Today, we know the cause of this lethal summer. One year previously, the largest and most deadly volcanic eruption in recorded history took place in Indonesia. The sulphur dioxide and dust that the eruption spewed into the atmosphere blocked sunlight and cooled the Earth, leading to a 'volcanic winter'.

Indonesia has more active volcanoes than any country in the world. On 15th April, 1815, Mt Tambora, a volcano which is situated on the island of Sumbawa, erupted. The event was catastrophic. Toxic gases, rocks, and hot ash spread across the island, killing over 12,000 people instantly. 160 cubic kilometres of ash was thrown into the atmosphere, along with 400 million tons of gas. The eruption column reached an altitude of more than 43 km.

To get some idea of the scale of the event: before the explosion, Mount Tambora was 4,300 metres high. After, it measured just 2,851 metres. The explosion was so huge it was heard 2,600 km away, and the sky remained dark for two days in areas up to 600 km from the volcano.

The Tambora eruption was terrifying not only because it was so destructive, but because it happened so suddenly and with such speed. Unlike other more famous eruptions such as at Mt Vesuvius in 79 AD and on the island of Krakatoa in 1883, which had fairly long eruption sequences, Mt Tambora erupted with almost no warning and was extremely quick in reaching its climax.

The loss of life after the eruption was terrible. Famine of extraordinary and severe intensity immediately broke out, taking the lives of thousands. On 3rd August, 1815, a Lt Phillips arrived on Sumbawa and reported: "The extreme misery to which the inhabitants have been reduced is shocking to behold." More than 71,000 people in Indonesia eventually died. Mt Tambora's 1815 eruption killed more people in total than any other known volcanic eruption in history.

Amazingly, despite the fact the Tambora eruption occurred less than 200 years ago and is the most deadly eruption ever to have been observed by humans, few people today have even heard of it. The eruption of Mt Tambora in 1815 remains one the most overlooked natural disasters in history.

Reading

1 a) Read the text and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) is correct. Justify your answers.

- Crops didn't grow in Europe and North America in the summer of 1816 because
 - disease killed them.
 - temperatures were so low.
 - people were too ill to farm.
 - animals ate them from the ground.
 - The term 'volcanic winter' refers to
 - a period of time when more volcanoes than usual erupt.
 - an unusually large volcanic eruption.
 - a longer than normal winter caused by a volcanic eruption.
 - a decrease in temperatures across the globe caused by a volcanic eruption.
 - The Mt Tambora eruption
 - occurred during 'the year without a summer'.
 - threw material 43 km up into the sky.
 - increased the height of the volcano.
 - trapped 12,000 people in their homes.
 - In contrast to other eruptions, the Mt Tambora eruption
 - didn't spread its lava as fast.
 - gave fewer signs it was going to happen.
 - didn't cause as much damage.
 - took longer to come to an end.
 - After the eruption
 - other volcanoes in the region erupted.
 - there were serious food shortages.
 - many people died of shock.
 - the surviving inhabitants left the island.
 - The author finds the public's lack of knowledge about the Tambora eruption

A unacceptable.	C understandable.
B disappointing.	D surprising.
- b) Answer the questions. Use your own words.
- How did the Mt Tambora eruption cause climate change?
 - What were some of the immediate consequences of the eruption of Mt Tambora?

(8x2=16)

Progress Check 8

Listening

2 Listen to the news report and decide if the statements (1-8) are **True** or **False**.

- 1 Twenty-six centimetres of rain have fallen in the last month.
- 2 Several towns were affected by the mudslides.
- 3 Some homes were destroyed by the landslide.
- 4 It's been confirmed that people have died in the disaster.
- 5 Hundreds of search-and-rescue workers have arrived in Rio de Janeiro.
- 6 The town is located in a difficult place for rescue teams.
- 7 Neighbouring countries have already sent help.
- 8 Extremely heavy rain is common in the area during the summer.

(8x2=16)

Vocabulary

3 Fill in with: *tornado, pouring, flash, heat wave, forecast, beating, blowing, blazing, triggered, evacuate*.

- 1 The swept through the town, destroying everything in its path.
- 2 It's with rain outside.
- 3 What is the weather for tomorrow?
- 4 As soon as they felt the earthquake, the town's officials the alarm.
- 5 The residents were asked to the town immediately.
- 6 Temperatures during the reached 45°C.
- 7 We were listening to the wind through the trees.
- 8 A of lightning lit up the night sky.
- 9 Her heart was very fast.
- 10 You shouldn't sit in the sun; it will make you sick.

(10x2=20)

Grammar

4 Rewrite the following in reported speech. Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 "I can see you tomorrow," she said to me. (**told**)
- 2 "I've read that book already," Alex told Nathan. (**explained**)
- 3 "I don't like walking in the rain," he said. (**complained**)
- 4 "Can we have lunch?" she asked. (**suggested**)
- 5 "Did he come with you?" Ann said to Sam. (**asked**)
- 6 "Let's go to the beach," she said to us. (**suggested**)
- 7 "I'm sorry I was late," she said. (**apologised**)
- 8 "I'll help you when I get back," he said. (**promised**)
- 9 "No, I won't do this," said Alexander. (**refused**)
- 10 "Don't be late," he said. (**asked**)

(10x2=20)

Speaking

5 Choose the correct response.

- 1 A: What's the weather like outside?
B: **a** It's raining.
b It didn't stop raining.
- 2 A: An earthquake hit Japan yesterday.
B: **a** Really?
b Is it?
- 3 A: Have you heard about the cruise liner that sank yesterday?
B: **a** Listen to this!
b You can't be serious!
- 4 A: Ten people died in the tsunami.
B: **a** That's terrible.
b They did, didn't they?
- 5 A: Have you read it yet?
B: **a** I don't believe it.
b No, not yet.

(5x2=10)

Writing

6 Read the rubric, then write your story.

Your school newspaper is having a short-story competition. You have decided to enter. The story must be entitled ***The scariest experience of my life*** (120-180 words). Write your story.

(18 marks)

(Total=100)

Check your progress

- talk about natural disasters & weather conditions
- describe an event, break the news
- express surprise/disbelief
- compare & contrast photographs
- report someone's words
- write a story

GOOD / VERY GOOD // EXCELLENT ///